











A

# GRAMMAR

131

OF THE

# ENGLISH LANGUAGE;

FOR THE USE OF SCHOOLS.

BY W. H. WELLS, M. A.,

Principal of the Putnam Free School, Newburyport, and President of the Essex County Teachers' Association.

Sirty=fifth Thousand.

BOSTON:

PUBLISHED BY JOHN P. JEWETT & CO.

ANDOVER: WILLIAM H. WARDWELL.

1848.

PE 1111 W 53

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1846,

By Allen, Morrill & Wardwell,

In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the District of Massachusetts.

D. of C. Pub. Lib.

# PREFACE.

A BRIEF notice of the circumstances under which the fol lowing work has been written, will afford a general idea of its prominent characteristics.

About nine years since, while engaged in the instruction of a class of teachers, the author commenced a critical examination of several grammatical works, in connection with a systematic course of English reading. All the important principles of the language were familiarly discussed before the class. The definitions and rules of different grammarians were carefully compared with each other, and tested by constant reference to the usage of standard writers. In conducting the exercises of successive classes of teachers, a similar course has been repeated from year to year till the present time. The result of these labors is embodied in the work now offered to the public.\*

English Grammar is too often taught as if it were merely the art of parsing. It is hoped that instructors will find the present work adapted to teach "the art of speaking and writing." Copious exercises and illustrations have been introduced, and the learner is required to make constant application of the principles as he advances.

<sup>\*</sup>In pursuing this investigation, the author has collected between three and four hundred different treatises on English Grammar, and noted above eighteen thousand illustrative examples in the productions of the best English writers.

The essay on Oral Instruction was prepared at the request of Henry Barnard, Esq., Commissioner of Public Schools for the State of Rhode Island, and first appeared as one of his series of Educational Tracts.

The author's acknowledgments are due to Mr. J. M. Ordway, of Lowell, for important assistance in the preparation of the work; and to several other teachers and friends of education, for valuable suggestions during its progress through the press.

W. H. W.

Phillips Academy, 1846.

### ADVERTISEMENT TO THE NEW STEREOTYPE EDITION.

THE publishers of the School Grammar having found it necessary to prepare new sets of stereotype plates for the work, the author has availed himself of the opportunity to introduce such improvements as have been suggested by the experience of practical teachers.

The chapter on Analysis has been revised and enlarged with great care, and will be found to embody all the most important principles on this subject which are contained in the works of De Sacy, Andrews and Stoddard, Kühner, Crosby, and Crane. It is gratifying to observe that the attention of teachers is now so generally directed to this important mode of investigating the structure of our language, in connection with the ordinary exercises of etymological and syntactical parsing.

The work has been divided into sections for convenience of reference, and the different sizes of type will be found to be more distinct than in previous editions.

Andover, Oct., 1847.

#### CATALOGUE OF ENGLISH GRAMMARS.

[The catalogue here given embraces only those Grammars to which special reference is made in the pages of the following work.]

Adams, Rev. Charles, A. M., 12mo, Boston; 1838. Adams, Daniel, 3d ed. 12mo, Montpelier, Vt.; 1814. Ainsworth, Luther, 12mo, Providence; 1837.

Alden, Abner. A. M., 12mo, Boston; 1811.

Alexander, Caleb, A. M., 10th ed., 12mo, Keene, N. H.; 1814. Alexander, Samuel, 4th ed., 18mo, London; 1832. Allen, Rev. William, 2d ed., 12mo, London; 1824. Allen and Cornwell, 3d ed., 18mo, London; 1841. Angell, Oliver, A. M., 12mo, Providence; 1830. Angus, William, M. A., 2d ed., 12mo, Glasgow; 1807. Arnold, T. K., M. A., 2d ed., 12mo, London; 1841. 1sh, John, LL. D., new ed., 18mo, London; 1785. adgley, Jonathan, 12mo, Utica; 1845. aich, William S., 12mo, Boston; 1839. Baldwin, Edward, 2d ed., 18mo, London; 1824. Barnard, F. A. P., A. M., 12mo, New York; 1836. Barrett, John, 2d ed., 18mo, Boston; 1819. Barrett, Solomon, 10th ed., 18mo, Utica; 1845. Barre, Alexander, 9th ed., 18mo, Edinburgh; 1800. Beall, Alexander, 12mo, Cincinnati; 1841. Bell, John, 12mo, Glasgow; 1769. Bicknell, Alexander, 12mo, London; 1790. Bingham, Caleb, A. M., 12th ed., 24mo, Boston; 1801. Blair, Rev. David, 15th ed., 18mo, London; 1826. Booth, David, 12mo, London; 1837. Brace, Joab, 18mo, Philadelphia; 1839. Brightland, John, 5th ed., 12mo, London; 1728. British Grammar, 12mo, London and Boston; 1784. Brittain, Rev. Lewis, 2d ed., London: 1790 Brown, Goold, stereotype ed., 12mo, New York; 1846. Buchanan, James, 12mo, London; 1767. — Philadelphia; 1792. Bucke, Charles, 18mo, London; 1829. Bullions, Peter, D. D., 15th ed., 12mo, New York; 1846. Burn, John, 7th ed., 18mo, Glasgow; 1799. Burr, Jonathan, A. M. 3d ed., 18mo, Boston; 1818. Butler, Noble, A. M., 12mo, Louisville, Ky.; 1845. Cardell, William S., 3d ed., 18mo, Hartford; 1827. Chapin, Joel, 12mo, Springfield; 1842. Churchill, T. O., 12mo, London; 1823. Coar, Thomas, 12mo, London; 1796. Cobb, E., 2d ed., 12mo, Boston; 1821. Cobbett, William, 12mo, London; 1818. - New York; 1833.

Cochran, Peter, A. B., 18mo, Boston; 1802. Comly, John, 15th ed., 18mo, Philadelphia; 1838. Connel, Robert, 2d ed., 18mo, Glasgow; 1834. Connon, C. W., M. A., 12mo, Edinburgh; 1845. Cooper, J. G., 12mo, Philadelphia; 1831. Coot, C., LL. D., 8vo, London; 1788. Cornell, William M., 4to, Boston; 1840. Crane, George, 12mo, London; 1843. Crombie, Alexander, LL. D., F. R. S., 4th ed., 8vo, London; 1836. Cutler, Andrew, 12mo, Plainfield, Ct.; 1841. Dalton, John, 2d ed., 12mo, London; 1803. Davenport, B., 18mo, Wilmington, Del.; 1830. Davis, Pardon, 12mo, Philadelphia; 1845. Day, Parsons E., 2d ed., 18mo, Ithaca, N. Y.; 1844. Dearborn, Benjamin, 12mo, Boston; 1795. Del Mar, E., 12mo, London; 1842. Dilworth, Thomas, 26th ed., 12mo, London; 1764. D'Orsey, Alexander J. D., 12mo, Edinburgh; 1842. Earl, Mary, 18mo, Boston; 1816. Elmore, D. W., A. M., 18mo, Troy, N. Y.; 1830. Elphinston, James, 12mo, London; 1766. Emmons, S. B., 12mo, Boston; 1832. Everest, Cornelius B., 12mo, Norwich; 1835. Farnum, Caleb, A. M., 2d ed., 12mo, Boston; 1843. Farro, D., 12mo, London; 1754. Felch, W., 12mo, Boston; 1837. Felton, O. C., 2d ed., 12mo, Salem; 1843. Fenning, D., 12mo, London; 1771. Fisher, A., 28th ed., 12mo, London; 1795. Fletcher, Levi, 12mo, Philadelphia; 1834. Flint, John, 18mo, New York; 1837. Flower, M. and W. B., 18mo, London; 1844. Fowle, William B., 12mo, Boston; 1842. Frazee, Rev. Bradford, 12mo, Philadelphia; 1844. French, D'Arcy A., 12mo, Baltimore; 1831. Frost, John, A. M., 12mo, Philadelphia; 1842. Fuller, Allen, 12mo, Plymouth, Mass.; 1822. Gilbert, E., 18mo, New York; 1835. Giles, Rev. T. A., M. A., 2d ed., 12mo, London; 1838. Goldsbury, John, A. M., 12mo, Boston; 1842. Goodenow, S. B., 2d ed., 12mo, Boston; 1843. Graham, G. F., 12mo, London; 1843. Grant, John, A. M., 12mo, London; 1813. Granville, George, 12mo, London; 1827. Green, R. W., 5th ed., 18mo, Philadelphia; 1834. Greenleaf, J., 20th ed., 4to, New York; 1837. Greenwood, James, 2d ed., 12mo, London; 1722. Gurney, David, A. M., 2d ed., 18mo, Boston; 1808. Hall, Rev. S. R., 2d ed., 12mo, Springfield; 1833. Hallock, Edward J., 12mo, Andover; 1842. Hamlin, L. F., stereotype ed., 12mo, New York; 1832.

Hart, John S, A. M., 12mo, Philadelphia; 1845. Hazen, Edward, A. M, 12mo, New York; 1842.

Hazlitt, Wm., 18mo, London; 1810. Hendrick, J. L., A. M., 18mo, Syracuse; 1844. Higginson, Rev. T. E., 12mo, Dublin; 1803. Hiley, Richard, 3d ed., 12mo, London; 1840. Hodgson, Rev. Isaac, 12mo, London; 1770. Hornsey, John, 6th ed., 12mo, York, England; 1816. Hort, W. Jillard, 18mo, London; 1822. Howe, S. L., 18mo, Lancaster, Ohio; 1838. Hull, J. H., 4th ed., 12mo, Boston; 1828. Ingersoll, C. M., 12mo, Philadelphia; 1835. Jaudon, D., 4th ed., 18mo, Philadelphia; 1828. Jenkins, Azariah, 12mo, Rochester, N. Y.; 1835. Joel, Thomas, 12mo, London; 1775. Johnson, Samuel, LL. D., (prefixed to Dictionary), 4to, London; 1775. Johnson, Ben, 8vo, London; 1640. — 1816. Jones, Joshua, 18mo, Philadelphia; 1841. Judson, Adoniram, A. B., 12mo, Boston; 1808. Kennion, Charlotte, 12mo, London; 1842. King, Walter W., 18mo, London; 1841. Kirkham, Samuel, 36th ed., 12mo, Rochester, N. Y.; 1834. Latham, R. G., A. M., 12mo, London; 1843. Lennie, William, 13th ed., 18mo, Edinburgh; 1831. Lewis, William G., 18mo, London; 1821. Lindsay, Rev. John, A. M., 18mo, London; 1842. Locke, John, M. D., 18mo, Cincinnati; 1827. Lovechild, Mrs., 40th ed., 18mo, London; 1842. Lowth, Robert, LL. D., 18mo, London; 1763. — Cambridge, U. S.; 1838. Lynde, John, 18mo, Woodstock, Vt.; 1821. Maittaire, Michael, 12mo, London; 1712. Marcet, Mrs., 7th ed., 18mo, London; 1843. Martin, Benjamin, 12mo, London; 1754. M'Cready, F., 12mo, Philadelphia; 1820. M'Culloch, J. M., D. D., 7th ed., 18mo, Edinburgh; 1841. Meilan, Mark Anthony, 12mo, London; 1803. Menye, J., 12mo, New York; 1785. Milligan, Rev. George, 2d ed., 18mo, Edinburgh; 1839. Morgan, Jonathan, A. B., 12mo, Hallowell, Me.; 1814. Morely, Charles, A. B., 18mo, Hartford; 1836. Murray, Lindley, 8vo, Holdgate, England; 1795. - New York; 1814. Nutting, Rufus, A. M., 3d ed., 12mo, Montpelier, Vt.; 1826. Oliver, Edward, D. D., 12mo, London; 1807. Oliver, Samuel, 8vo, London; 1825. Parker and Fox, 5th ed., 12mo, Boston; 1837. Parkhurst, John L., 18mo, Andover; 1838. Peirce, Oliver B., 12mo, New York; 1839. Perley, Daniel, M. D., 18mo, Andover; 1834. Perry, William, (prefixed to Dictionary), 12mo, Edinburgh; 1801. Picket, A. and J. W., 12mo, Cincinnati; 1837. Pinnock, W., 12mo, London; 1829. Pond's Murray, 6th ed., 12mo, Worcester; 1835. Powers, Daniel, A. M., 12mo, West Brookfield, Mass.; 1845. Priestley, Joseph, LL. D., 3d ed., 18mo, London; 1772.

l ue, Hugh A., 18mo, Philadelphia; 1841.

Pullen, P. H., 2d ed., 12mo, London; 1822. Putnam, J. M., 18mo, Concord, N. H.; 1831. Reed, Caleb, A. M., 18mo, Boston; 1821. Robbins, Manasseh, 12mo, Providence; 1826. Ross, Robert, 7th ed., 12mo, Hartford; 1782. Russell, J., D. D., 10th ed., 18mo, London; 1842. Russell, William E., 2d ed., 18mo, Hartford; 1819. Sanborn, D. H., 12mo, Concord, N. H.; 1836. Simmonite, W. J., 12mo, London; 1841. Skillern, R. S., A. M., 2d ed., 12mo, Gloucester, England; 1808. Smart, B. H., 12mo, London; 1841. Smetham, Thomas, 12mo, London; 1774. Smith, Eli, 18mo, Philadelphia; 1812. Smith, Peter, A. M., 18mo, Edinburgh; 1826. Smith, R. C., stereotype ed., 12mo, Philadelphia; 1845. Snyder, W., 12mo, Winchester; 1834. Spear, M. P., 12mo, Boston; 1845. Staniford, Daniel, A. M., 2d ed., 18mo, Boston; 1815. Stearns, George, 4to, Boston; 1843. St. Quentin, D., A. M., 12mo, London; 1812. Story, Joshua, 3d ed., 12mo, Newcastle, England; 1783. Sutcliffe, Joseph, A. M., 2d ed., 12mo, London; 1815. Swett, J., A. M., 2d ed., 12mo, Claremont, N. H.; 1844. Ticken, William, 12mo, London; 1806. Ticknor, Elisha, A. M., 3d ed., 18mo, Boston; 1794. Todd, Lewis C., 2d ed., 18mo, Fredonia, N. Y.; 1827. Trinder, William M., 12mo, London; 1781. Ussher, G. Neville, 12mo, London; 1787. — Exeter, N. H.; 1804. Waldo, John, 18mo, Philadelphia; 1814. Walker, John, 12mo, London; 1805. Wallis, John, D. D., (in Latin), 6th ed., 8vo, London; 1765. Ward, H., 12mo, Whitehaven, England; 1777.
Ward, John, LL. D., 12mo, London; 1758.
Ward, William, M. A., 3d ed., 12mo, Northampton, England; 1771.
Webber, Samuel, 12mo, Cambridge, Mass.; 1832. Webster, Noah, LL. D., 12mo, New Haven; 1831. Weld, A. H., M. A., 12mo, Portland; 1846. Whiting, Joseph, A. M., 12mo, Detroit; 1845. Wilbur, Josiah, 2d ed., 12mo, Bellows Falls; 1822. Wilcox, A. F., 18mo, New Haven; 1828. Willard, Samuel, 18mo, Greenfield, Mass; 1816.

Wilson, George, 18mo, London; 1777. Wilson, J. P., D. D., 8vo, Philadelphia; 1817. Worcester, Samuel, 18mo, Gloucester, Mass.; 1827. Wright, Joseph W., C. E., 12mo, New York; 1838.

# COLLATERAL AUTHORITIES.

Adam, Alexander, LL. D. Rudiments of Latin and English Grammar. Edinburgh; 1772. — Boston; 1812. Andrews and Stoddard's Latin Grammar. Boston; 1845.

Bachi, Pietro. Grammar of the Italian Language. Boston; 1838. Barber, Jonathan. Grammar of Elocution. New Haven; 1830.

Beattie, James, LL. D. Theory of Language. London; 1783. - Philadelphia; 1809.

Blair, Hugh, D. D. Lectures on Rhetoric and Belles Letters. London;

1783. - Philadelphia; 1829.

Bolmar's edition of Levizac's French Grammar. Philadelphia; 1841. Brande, W. T. Dictionary of Science, Literature, and Art. London and New York; 1843. Bugard, B. F. Complete Grammar of the French Language. Boston;

1843.

Buttmann, Philip. Larger Greek Grammar. Translated by Edward Robinson. Andover; 1833.

Campbell, George, D. D. Philosophy of Rhetoric. London; 1776. —

New York; 1834.

Comstock, Andrew, M. D. System of Elocution. Philadelphia; 1845. Crosby, Alpheus. Grammar of the Greek Language. Boston; 1844. Day, H. N. Art of Elocution. New Haven; 1844. De Sacy, A. J. Sylvestre. Principles of General Grammar; translated

from the French, by Fosdick. Andover; 1834.

Edinburgh Encyclopædia. Edinburgh; 1830. Enfield, William, A. M. New Pronouncing Dictionary. London; 1807. Fulton and Knight. Pronouncing and Explanatory Dictionary. Edinburgh; 1807.

Harris, James. Hermes, or a Philosophical Inquiry concerning Universal Grammar. London; 1751.—1806. Hicks, George, D. D. Thesaurus. Oxford; 1705.

Jameson, R.S. Dictionary of the English Language. London; 1827. Jamieson, Alexander. Grammar of Rhetoric and Polite Literature. London; 1818. - New Haven; 1820.

Johnson, Samuel, LL. D. Dictionary of the English Language. Dub-

lin; 1775.
Jones, Stephen. General Pronouncing and Explanatory Dictionary of the English Language. London; 1798. Kenrick, William, LL. D. New Dictionary of the English Language.

London; 1773.

Knowles, James. Pronouncing and Explanatory Dictionary of the

English Language. London; 1835. Kühner, Raphael. Larger Greek Grammar. Translated by Edwards and Taylor. Andover; 1844.

Latham, R. G., A. M. The English Language. London; 1841. Mandeville, Henry. Elements of Reading and Oratory. Utica, N. Y.;

McElligott, James N. Manual, Analytical and Synthetical, of Orthography and Definitions. New York; 1845. Murdoch, J. E. and William Russell. Orthophony; or Vocal Culture in Elocution. Boston; 1845.

Nares, Robert, B. D. Elements of Orthoëpy. London; 1784.

Page, David P. Normal Chart of the Elementary Sounds of the English

Language. Syracuse, N. Y.; 1846.

Perry, William. Royal Standard English Dictionary. Edinburgh;

Pickbourn, James. Dissertation on the English verb. London; 1789. Rees, Abraham, D. D. Cyclopædia. London; 1820. — Philadelphia;

Rush, James, M. D. Philosophy of the Human Voice. Philadelphia;

1833.

Russell, William. Lessons in Enunciation. Boston; 1841.

Sheridan, Thomas, A. M. General Dictionary of the English Language. London; 1797.

Smart, B. H. Principles of Pronunciation, and Pronouncing Diction-

ary of the English Language. London; 1846.

Walker, William, B. D. Treatise of English Particles. London; 1653. Walker, John. Critical Pronouncing Dictionary. Dublin; 1794.

Webster, Noah, LL. D. American Dictionary of the English Language.

New Haven; 1841.

Worcester, J. É. Universal and Critical Dictionary of the English Language. Boston; 1846.

Wright, Albert D. Analytical Orthography. New York; 1845.

# TO TEACHERS.

That portion of the work which is printed in the largest type, is designed for beginners; and the corresponding questions are printed in Roman characters. That which is printed in type of the second size, is designed for pupils more advanced; and the corresponding questions are in Italics. That which is printed in the smallest type, is designed for occasional reference.

The Exercises which occur in different portions of the work are intend-

ed to be modified or extended at the discretion of teachers.

# ORAL INSTRUCTION

IN

# ENGLISH GRAMMAR.

[The following outline of Oral Instruction is designed to furnish practical suggestions to teachers engaged in imparting a knowledge of

the rudiments of English Grammar.

By adopting a familiar, inductive method of presenting this subject, it may be rendered highly attractive to young learners; and the practice of introducing illustrative exercises in composition, will be found to afford great assistance to pupils in comprehending and retaining the principles presented, while it also leads them to cultivate the habit of expressing their thoughts with facility and accuracy.

It is not expected that teachers will confine themselves strictly to any particular system; but it is hoped that the *general* features of the sketch here presented will be found to meet the wants of all classes of

beginners.]

## PARTS OF SPEECH.

§ 1. The classification of words may be introduced by referring to the different kinds of trees; to the different kinds of animals; or to any other collection of objects that admit of a regular division into distinct classes. Thus, when we go into a forest, we find that the number of trees about us is greater than we can estimate. But we soon observe that a portion of them have certain striking resemblances, while they differ essentially from all the rest. We also observe that others, which differ materially from these, have similar resemblances to one another. And by extending our

observation, we find that this countless multitude of trees all belong to a very few simple classes, which are easily distinguished from each other. Those of one class we associate together, and call them *Oak* trees; those of another class we call *Pine* trees; and in this manner we proceed with all the different kinds.

Just so it is with the words of our language. Though their number is about eighty thousand, yet we find, on a careful examination, that they all belong to less than a dozen different classes, called Parts of Speech; so that we have only to learn the character of these divisions, and we shall be able to tell the class to which any word in the language belongs.

By some such introductory illustration, the curiosity of a class of beginners may be easily excited, and they will thus be prepared to enter with eagerness upon the labor of learning to distinguish the different parts of speech.

The teacher should lead his pupils to take an active part in these lessons from the beginning; not only by proposing frequent questions for them to answer, but also by encouraging them to ask such questions as their own curiosity may suggest.

### THE NOUN.

§ 2. Having prepared the way for the consideration of words, the teacher next requests his pupils to mention the names of any objects that occur to them. As they proceed to give the words book, desk, inkstand, etc., the teacher writes them in a column on the blackboard.

The teacher now asks a variety of questions, similar to the following:—Are all words names? Can you mention any words that are not names? Are good and bad, names? Why not? Can you think of any object that has not a name? Do any objects that you cannot see or touch have names? Is wise a name? Is wisdom? Virtue? Virtuous? Knowledge?

After these questions have been disposed of, the pupils are informed that the *names* of all objects, whether material or immaterial, are called *Nouns*; and the teacher proceeds at the same time to write this title over the column of names on the board.

One or more sentences are now placed in the hands of the pupils, or written on the board; and each member of the class proceeds to select all the nouns, and write them in a column on a slate or piece of paper. The teacher should commence with sentences of the simplest construction, and afterwards introduce more difficult forms of expression as the learners advance.

#### MODEL I.\*

The earth is a large globe or ball. - Virtue is better than riches.

Nouns.
Earth
Globe
Ball
Virtue
Riches

Exercises of this description should be continued till the pupils are able to point out the nouns of any common sentence with readiness.

The teacher next writes several nouns on the black-board, and calls on the class to construct one or more sentences embracing the words which he has placed before them.

### Model II.

Sun, bird, idleness, night.

The hawk is a bird of prey. — Idleness often leads to vice. — The sun shines by day, and the moon by night.

After going through with several exercises of this kind, the pupils may be required to construct a variety of sentences, and write the letter n over all the nouns embraced in them.

# MODEL III.†

In winter the ponds and rivers are generally covered with ice. — Russia is the largest country in Europe.

<sup>\*</sup> See Frazee's Grammar. † See Greenleaf's Grammar.

#### THE ADJECTIVE.

§ 3. When the pupils have become sufficiently acquainted with the nature of nouns, they may be introduced to the class of Adjectives in a similar manner. The teacher directs the attention of the pupils to a book, and asks if they can mention any words that express its character or quality. To this they will readily answer, that it is a good book, a large book, an interesting book, etc. The teacher then calls on them to name as many words as they can, that express the qualities of objects. As they proceed to enumerate words of this class, the teacher writes them in a column on the board as before.

Such expressions as "These books," "A wise man," "Ten days," are next written on the board; and the learners are requested to point out the words which serve to define or limit the nouns, but do not strictly qualify them. After this is done, they proceed to mention others of the same character, which are written under the column of qualifying words already commenced. It is now time to inform them that all words which are used to qualify or define nouns, belong to the class called Adjectives; and this title is accordingly placed at the head of the column of words on the board.

The pupils may also be told in this connection, that the words a or an and the are distinguished from other definitives by the title of Articles.

Simple sentences are again placed before the pupils, and they are required to select all the adjectives, writing them in a column as before. They should also distinguish the articles, by underlining them in the column.

## MODEL IV.

Great men are not always wise. — The climate of Egypt is hot in summer, but delightful in winter.

Adjectives.

Great Wise

The

Hot Delightful

Other sentences are now given to the pupils, from which they

select the nouns and adjectives, writing them in separate columns, and distinguishing the articles as in the previous exercise.

#### MODEL V.

There are very few plants that will grow in all countries. — Ivory is a hard, solid, and firm substance, of a white color.

Nouns.	ADJECTIVES.		
Plants Countries	Few All		
Substance Color	<u>A</u> Hard Solid		
	Firm A		
	White		

The teacher next writes a number of adjectives on the board, and the pupils proceed as before to form the sentences which embrace them.

#### MODEL VI.

#### Diligent, cold, warm, sweet.

Charles is a diligent scholar.—In cold weather we protect ourselves by the use of warm clothing.—The rose is sweet, but it is surrounded with thorns.

After this, the pupils write sentences containing adjectives of their own selection. In exercises of this character, the learners should distinguish, by their several abbreviations, all the parts of speech to which they have attended.

# MODEL VII.

Copper is a very useful metal, which is found in almost all parts of the n world. It is of a red color, and may be drawn out into fine wire, or n beaten into thin leaves.

### THE VERB.

§ 4. This part of speech may be introduced in a manner similar to that exhibited in the following dialogue:—

Teacher. What part of speech is horse?

Pupil. A noun.

- T. Why?
- P. Because it is a name.
- T. Can you think of any words that tell what the horse does?
- P. Runs, walks, etc.
- T. Are runs and walks nouns?
- P. They are not.
- T. Why not?
- P. Because they are not names.
- T. Are they adjectives?
- P. They are not.
- T. Why not?
- P. Because they do not qualify or define any thing.
- T. Will you name as many words as you can recollect, that tell what any thing does, or express some kind of action?
  - P. Speak, read, study, sing, play, etc.

These words are written in a column on the board, after which the dialogue is continued:—

- T. In the sentence, "The sea is calm," does the word is express any degree of action?
  - P. It does not.
  - T. Does it express the being or existence of any thing?
  - P. It does.
- T. Can you name any other words that are used to express the being or existence of objects?
  - P. Am, was, live, etc.

These words are placed under the column already commenced on the board, and the pupils are informed that all words which express action, and those which express being or existence, are called Verbs.

A number of sentences are next placed before the pupils, from which they select all the verbs, writing them by themselves as in previous exercises.

## Model VIII.

Birds fly in the air. — The earth shook and trembled. — Boston is the

capital of Massachusetts. — I wrote a letter to my friend last week, and received an answer this morning.

VERBS.
Fly
Shook
Trembled
Is
Wrote
Received

Other sentences are now given to the learners, from which they select all the nouns, adjectives, and verbs; writing them in separate columns, and distinguishing the articles.

# Model IX.

He came in the morning, and went away at night, — Truth never fears examination. — Venus is the brightest of all the planets. It is sometimes visible at mid-day.

Nouns.	Adjectives.	VERBS.
Morning	The	Came
Night Truth	The	Went Fears
Examination Venus	Brightest All	Is Is
Planets Mid-day	The	
Mia-aay	Visible	

Several verbs are next placed before the learners, and they are required to form sentences which include them. See Models  $\Pi$ . and VI.

After this, the pupils write sentences containing several verbs of their own choice; and distinguish all the verbs, adjectives, and nouns.

# MODEL X.

In the spring the farmer ploughs his ground and sows his sed; in ar n the summer and autumn he gathers his harvest; and in the winter he v n cuts his wood and threshes his grain.

The teacher should make frequent suggestions and explanations during these exercises. It is highly important that learners become 2\*

thoroughly acquainted with the nature of verbs, before advancing to consider the other parts of speech.

#### THE PRONOUN.

§ 5. Teacher. In the sentence, "John is diligent, and he will improve," for what name does the word he stand?

Pupil. John.

- T. Can you mention any other names for which he is sometimes used?
  - P. George, Charles, man, boy, etc.
  - T. For what nouns does she stand?
  - P. Jane, Susan, girl, woman, etc.
- T. What words besides he and she are used in the place of nouns?
  - P. Him, her, I, who, etc.

These words are written on the board, under the title of *Pronouns*; and the pupils are informed that this term applies to all words which are used to supply the place of nouns.

Sentences are now placed before the learners, from which they select all the pronouns, writing them in a column by themselves. See Models I. and IV.

Other sentences are also given them, from which they select all the nouns, adjectives, verbs, and pronouns, writing them in columns as before. See Models V. and IX.

After this, the teacher writes several pronouns on the board, and the pupils form sentences embracing them. See Models II. and VI.

They then write sentences including a number of pronouns of their own choice.

#### Model XI.

When the wind blows violently among the trees, they bend, and almost v break. Though their roots are very strong, they sometimes yield to the force of the wind, and fall to the ground.

In this manner the pupils secure by frequent repetition what

they have before learned, and also cultivate habits of careful comparison and discrimination, by examining the different parts of speech in connection.

#### THE ADVERBA

§ 6. Teacher. In the sentence, "The horse runs very rapidly," what word tells how the horse runs?

Pupil. Rapidly.

- T. What word, then, does rapidly modify?
- P. Runs.
- T. What part of speech is runs?
- P. A verb.
- T. What word in the sentence modifies rapidly?
- P. Very.
- T. In the sentence, "He is an exceedingly diligent scholar," what word modifies diligent?
  - P. Exceedingly.
  - T. What part of speech is diligent?
  - P. An adjective.
- T. The words rapidly, exceedingly, and very, all belong to the same class, and are called Adverbs. Rapidly modifies a verb; exceedingly modifies an adjective; and very modifies an adverb. Remember, then, that all words which modify verbs, adjectives, or adverbs, belong to the class of Adverbs.
- T. Can you think of any other words that are used in this manner?
  - P. Wisely, here, now, when, etc.

These words are written in another column on the board, and headed Adverbs. When this is done, sentences are again placed before the pupils, from which they select all the adverbs, (Models I. and IV.) and others from which they select all the nouns, adjectives, verbs, pronouns, and adverbs. See Models V. and IX.

The teacher next writes a number of adverbs on the board, and the learners form sentences which embrace them. See Models II. and VI.

After this, they construct sentences containing adverbs selected by themselves, and distinguish all the parts of speech to which they have attended, as in former exercises. See Models VII, X, and

#### THE PREPOSITION.

§ 7. Teacher. When I say, "My hand is over the table," what word expresses the relation of my hand to the table?

Pupil. Over.

- T. When I say, "My hand is under the table," what word then expresses the relation between my hand and the table?
  - P. Under.
- T. Mention any other words that express the relation of different things to each other.
  - P. On, between, in, above, etc.

These words are written in a column on the board, and headed *Prepositions*. The pupils are told at the same time, that every word which is used to express the relation of one word to another belongs to this class.

Sentences are now given to the pupils, from which they select the prepositions; and others, from which they select all the classes of words which they have learned. See Models VIII. and IX.

They then proceed to construct sentences containing prepositions assigned by the teacher; and others embracing examples of their own selection. See Models VI. and XI.

# THE CONJUNCTION.

§ 8. Teacher. In the sentence, "I saw James or his brother," what word connects James and brother?

Pupil. Or.

- T. What word connects the different parts or clauses of the sentence, "James went to school, but John remained at home?"
  - P. But.
- T. Can you think of any other words that are used to connect words, or clauses of a sentence?
  - P. And, nor, if, etc.

These words are written on the board in a column headed Conjunctions; and the pupils are told that all words used merely as connectives belong to this class.

They are then required to select all the conjunctions from given sentences; and afterwards to write sentences containing conjunctions, and others embracing all the parts of speech which they have yet learned. See previous Models.

#### THE INTERJECTION.

§ 9. Teacher. In the expression, "Alas! I am undone," what word is used merely to express strong feeling or emotion?

Pupil. Alas.

T. Can you name any other words that are used to express strong or sudden emotion?

P. Oh, ah, ho, etc.

These words are written in a column on the board; and the pupils are told that they form a class called *Interjections*. They are then directed to write a few sentences containing examples of this part of speech.

# GENERAL EXERCISES ON ALL THE PARTS OF SPEECH.

§ 10. Having considered the several classes of words separately, the learners are now prepared to take up a variety of selections from their reading lessons, and classify the different words as they occur; writing those of each part of speech in a column by themselves. See Models V. and IX.

They should also devote several lessons to the writing of sentences which embrace copious examples of all the parts of speech; placing an abbreviation over each word, to indicate the class to which it belongs. See Models X. and XI.

All exercises of this kind should be made progressive. From simple sentences, the learners should advance to the construction of those which are more difficult; from difficult sentences, to short compositions; and from short compositions, to those of greater length.

By pursuing the course here described, the pupils will soon become familiar with the nature of words in common use, and be able to classify them with facility.

# MORE PARTICULAR EXAMINATION OF THE PARTS OF SPEECH.

§ 11. The subdivisions of the parts of speech, and their most important offices, may now be brought under consideration.

#### Nouns.

§ 12. The distinction between proper and common nouns, and the distinctions of gender, person, number, and case, may be severally introduced by familiar interrogative exercises, similar to those which have already been given to aid in distinguishing the parts of speech.

As soon as the pupils understand the nature of proper and common nouns, they may be required to select all the nouns from given sentences, writing the proper nouns in one column and the common nouns in another. They should then construct sentences which embrace examples of both proper and common nouns. (See previous Models.) The other distinctions of nouns may be illustrated and enforced by similar exercises.

#### ADJECTIVES.

§ 13. The degrees of comparison are now taken up, and made the basis of a familiar oral exercise. The distinction between descriptive and definitive adjectives should also receive some farther attention. These distinctions are next exemplified in written exercises.

#### VERBS.

§ 14. The *verb* is the most difficult and important of all the parts of speech, and the teacher should make special effort to impart clear and correct views respecting its principal uses.

The assertion or affirmation expressed by the verb may now be explained to the young learner.

The division of verbs into regular and irregular, and into transitive and intransitive, with the distinction between the active and the

passive voice, should be introduced and illustrated by practical inductive exercises.

The government of the objective case by a transitive verb, and the agreement of a verb with its subject or nominative, may be explained in this connection.

The writing of illustrative sentences, on the part of the pupils, follows next in order. See previous Models.

It is generally better not to attempt a full exhibition of the *modes* and *tenses*, till pupils have advanced farther in the study. They should, however, be taught at this period to distinguish between *declaratory*, *conditional*, and *interrogative* sentences; and to determine whether the time denoted by a verb is *present*, past, or future.

A general idea of participles, and of auxiliary and compound verbs, may also be communicated at this time.

Each of these subjects should be explained in the familiar, conversational manner already described; and accompanied by practical exercises in the construction of sentences.

## PRONOUNS, PREPOSITIONS, AND CONJUNCTIONS.

- § 15. The remaining points which demand special consideration in these introductory lessons, are the division of pronouns into personal, relative, and interrogative, together with the person, number, and case of pronouns; the connection of words and sentences by conjunctions; and the relation expressed by prepositions. These modifications, like those before presented, should be introduced in a familiar and practical manner, and made the basis of exercises in the construction of illustrative sentences.
- § 16. Before closing this course of lessons, the learners should perform several exercises in composition, exemplifying all the important principles to which they have attended. The first exercise may embrace the different modifications of the noun; the second, those of the adjective; the third, those of the verb; the fourth, those of the pronoun; and the fifth, the principles relating to the remaining parts of speech.

#### MODEL XII.

Modifications of the Noun.

I am highly gratified, my dear friend, to learn of your safe return from

Ohio. My brother and sister expect to leave Boston in about two weeks. They will spend a few days at Springfield, in compliance with your father's kind invitation.—I, Thomas Smith, have written this short composition.

Common Nouns. — Friend, return, brother, sister, weeks, days, compliance, father's, invitation, composition.

Proper Nouns. - Ohio, Boston, Springfield, Thomas Smith.

Noun in the Masculine Gender. - Brother, father's, Thomas Smith.

Noun in the Feminine Gender. - Sister.

Nouns in the Neuter Gender.—Return, Ohio, Boston, weeks, days, Springfield, compliance, invitation, composition.

Noun in the Common Gender. - Friend.

Noun in the First Person. - Thomas Smith.

Noun in the Second Person. - Friend.

Nouns in the Third Person.—Return, Ohio, brother, sister, Boston, weeks, days, Springfield, compliance, father's, invitation, composition.

Nouns in the Singular Number. — Friend, return, Ohio, brother, sister, Boston, Springfield, compliance, father's, invitation, Thomas Smith, composition.

Nouns in the Plural Number. - Weeks, days.

Nouns in the Nominative Case. - Brother, sister, Thomas Smith.

Noun in the Possessive Case. - Father's.

Nouns in the Objective Case. — Return, Ohio, Boston, weeks, days, Springfield, compliance, invitation, composition.

Noun in the Case Independent. - Friend.

§ 17. After the pupils have in this manner exemplified the various modifications of all the parts of speech, they should be required to write several compositions of considerable length, and parse each word by itself. Thus, in parsing a noun, the learner should tell why it is a noun; whether it is proper or common, and why; its gender, and why; person, and why; number, and why; case, and why. If it is in the nominative case, he should point out the verb of which it is the subject; if in the possessive, the noun denoting the object possessed; if in the objective, the word which governs it. A similar course should be adopted in parsing all the other parts of speech.

# ENGLISH GRAMMAR.

§ 18. Grammar is the science which treats of the principles of language.

English Grammar teaches the art of speaking and writ-

ing the English Language correctly.

§ 19. Grammar is divided into four parts; — Orthography, Etymology, Syntax, and Prosody.

Orthography treats of letters, and the proper method

of combining them to form syllables and words.

Etymology treats of the classification of words, their derivation, and their various modifications.

Syntax treats of the construction of sentences, accord-

ing to the established laws of speech.

*Prosody* treats of accent, quantity, and the laws of versification.

# PART I.

# ORTHOGRAPHY.

§ 20. Orthography treats of letters, and the proper method of combining them to form syllables and words.

# LETTERS.

§ 21. A letter is a mark or character used to represent an elementary sound of the human voice.

The word letter, like many other terms used in orthography, is often applied to the sound represented, as well as the written character.

The letters of a language, taken collectively, are called its Alpha-

What is grammar? What does English grammar teach? How is grammar divided? Of what does Orthography treat? Etymology? Syntax? Prosody? What is a letter? What are the letters of a language called?

3

bet. The English alphabet consists of twenty-six letters, which have the following different forms:—

Rom	ROMAN. ITALIC.		OLD ENGLISH.		SCRIPT.			
Capital	. Small	Capital.	Small.	Capital.	Small.	Capital.	Small.	-Names.
A	a	$\boldsymbol{A}$	a	A	α	A	a	A.
В	b	$\boldsymbol{\mathit{B}}$	b	B	b	B	b	Bee.
$\mathbf{C}$	c	C	c	C	c	C	c	See.
D	d	D	d	D	d	Ø	d	Dee.
E	e	$\boldsymbol{E}$	e	Œ	e	E	e	E.
F	f	$\boldsymbol{\mathit{F}}$	f	F	f	$\mathcal{F}_{r}$	1	Eff.
G	g	G	g	G	$\mathfrak{g}$	$\mathscr{G}$	9	Jee.
$\mathbf{H}$	h	H	h	H	h -	26	h	Aitch.
I	i	I	i	I	i	J	i	I.
J	j	$\mathcal{J}$	j	I	j	J	j	Jay.
K	k	$\boldsymbol{K}$	k	K	k	K	k	Kay.
L	1	L	l	£	1	L	6	Ell.
$\mathbf{M}$	m	M	m	$\mathfrak{M}$	m	M	272	Em.
$\mathbf{N}$	$\mathbf{n}$	N	n	N	n	P	n	En.
O	0	0	0	0	ø	0	0	O. *
P	p.	$\boldsymbol{P}$	p	p	.p	P	p	Pee.
Q	q	Q	$\overline{q}$	0	q	2	9	Kue.
$\mathbf{R}$	r	R	r	R	r	R	r	Ar.
S	S	S	S	$\mathfrak{S}$	s	9	d	Ess.
T	t	T	t	T	t	9	t	Tee.
U	u	U	u	H	n	96	u	U.
V	v	V	v	b	v	W	v.	Vee.
W	w	W	w	w	w	ON	w	Double-u
$\mathbf{X}$	x	X	$\boldsymbol{x}$	$\mathcal{X}$	X	96	æ	Eks.
Y	y	Y	y	- 10	ŋ	y	y	Wy.
Z	Z	Z	z	2	3	26	2	Zee.

U and v were formerly considered the same letter, and were used indiscriminately, the one for the other; as, have for have, and church for church.

The sounds of i and j were both originally represented by the letter i;

as, Iames for James.

When the diphthongs  $\alpha$  and  $\alpha$  have either of the sounds of e, the letters are united in printing.

Examples: - Ægis, diæresis, œsophagus, antœci.

### CAPITALS AND ITALICS.

- § 22. The following classes of words should commence with capital letters:
  - 1. The first word of a sentence.
  - 2. The first word of every line in poetry.
  - 3. The first word of a direct quotation.

Examples: — And Nathan said unto David, "Thou art the man."—
Remember the ancient maxim, "Know thyself."

An indirect quotation may be introduced without the use of a capital.

Example:—It is recorded of him who "spake three thousand proverbs," that "his songs were a thousand and five."

4. Words used as names of the Deity.

Examples: — "Our Father, who art in Heaven." — "Remember now thy Creator, in the days of thy youth."

- 5. Proper names and titles of honor or distinction.
  - Examples: The city of Boston; The Honorable Daniel Webster; Sir Matthew Hale; Pliny the Younger.
- 6. Common nouns personified.

Examples: — "If Pain comes into a heart, he is quickly followed by Pleasure; and if Pleasure enters, you may be sure that Pain is not far off."—Addison.

"And Discipline at length,
O'erlooked and unemployed, fell sick and died.
Then Study languished, Emulation slept,
And Virtue fled." — Cowper.

What are the several classes of words which commence with capitals?

7. Every important word in a phrase used as a title or caption.

Examples: - "Prescott's History of the Conquest of Mexico." - "Virtue the only true Source of Nobility." - " The American Board of Commissioners for Foreign Missions." - " The New York Historical Society." - " The American Revolution."

The pronoun I and the interjection O should also be written in capitals.

Examples: — "Must I endure all this?" — "Come forth, O ve children of gladness, come!"

Most adjectives derived from proper names should commence with capitals.

Examples: - " A Grecian education was considered necessary to form the Roman orator, poet, or artist." - Whelpley. Gopernican system is that which is held to be the true system of the world." - Olmsted.

A personal pronoun referring to the Deity is sometimes commenced with a capital.

Examples: - "All that we possess is God's, and we are under obligation to use it all as He wills." - Wayland.

" Will He not hear thee Who the young ravens heareth from their nest? Will He not guard thy rest?" — Hemans.

There are also numerous cases in which words may commence either

with capitals or small letters, according to the taste of the writer.

Short, detached pieces of writing, are often composed entirely of capitals. For examples, see title-pages, heads of chapters and sections, monumental inscriptions, cards, etc.

§ 23. Italic letters are those which stand inclining. (See the Alphabet, p. 26.) This sentence is printed in Italics.

When an author wishes to distinguish any particular word or phrase, for the sake of emphasis, or for any other purpose, it is generally printed in Italics.

[The questions and directions which are printed in Italics, are designed to be omitted by beginners.]

What two words of one letter are always written and printed in capitals? What adjectives usually commence with capitals? What are Italic letters? For what purpose are they employed?

Examples: — "If we regard enunciation and pronunciation as the mechanical part of elocution; inflection, emphasis, and pausing, may be designated as its intellectual part." — Russell. "To be perfectly polite, one must have great presence of mind, with a delicate and quick sense of propriety." — Mrs. Chapone.

When a word is used merely as a word, it should generally be printed in Italics.

Examples:—" The adjective same is often used as a substitute."—
Webster. "Who is applied to persons, and which to animals and inanimate things."—Murray.

Words and phrases introduced into English writings from foreign languages, are generally expressed in Italics.

Examples: — "An adjournment sine die, is an adjournment without fixing the time of resuming business."— Webster's Dict. "The White Pine is, par excellence, a New England tree." — N. A. Review.

Sentences of special importance are often printed entirely in Italics.

When a particular word, phrase, or sentence, is designed to be made still more conspicuous than it would be if expressed in Italics, it is printed in capitals.

Examples: — "OBSERVATION and EXPERIMENT constitute the basis of the science of Mechanics." — Olmsted. "To the numerous class of young men in the United States, who are mainly dependent on their own resources for knowledge, or respectability, one of the most important counsels of wisdom which can be addressed, is, STUDY YOUR OWN CHARACTER AND PROSPECTS." — B. B. Edwards.

When a word or phrase, embraced in an *Italic sentence*, is to be distinguished from the rest, it is generally printed in *Roman* letters. If it is particularly important, it should be expressed in capitals.

Examples: — "The grand clew to all syntactical parsing is the sense."—
G. Brown. "Hydrostatics is that branch of Natural Philosophy which treats of the mechanical properties and agencies of Liquids."—
Olmsted. "To find the surface of a Regular Solid."—Day.

Select examples. Specify the several circumstances which require the use of Italics. How is a word or phrase rendered still more conspicuous than it would be if expressed in Italics? How is a word or phrase distinguished from the rest, in an Italic sentence?

In the common English version of the Scriptures, Italics are used to indicate those words which are not found in the original.

Examples: — "After two days was the feast of the passover;"—in the original, "After two days was the passover." "There are yet four months, and then cometh the harvest;"—in the original, "There are yet four months, and the harvest cometh."

§ 24. In writing, it is customary to underline such words as would be italicised in printing.

Example.

"It does not seem possible, even after the testimony of our senses."

#### EXERCISES.

[After studying attentively the rules respecting the use of capitals and Italics, pupils should be required to select from other works a variety of examples to which they respectively apply. The following directions will serve as a guide in performing this exercise. Those which are printed in Italics, are designed to be omitted by beginners.]

§ 25. Point out examples of words commencing with capitals at the beginning of a sentence;—at the beginning of a direct quotation. Select several names representing the Deity, which commence with capitals;—several examples of proper names and honorary titles. Examples of common nouns personified;—of important words in a title or caption. Examples of the pronoun I and the interjection O. Examples of adjectives derived from proper names. Examples of short pieces of writing, printed entirely incapitals.

Point out examples of important words and phrases, printed in Italics. Examples of entire sentences in Italics. Examples of words, phrases, and sentences, in capitals. Examples, in Italic sentences, of words, and phrases, printed in capitals or small Roman letters. Examples of words used merely as words. Examples of foreign words and phrases employed in English writings. Examples of Italic words in the Scriptures.

For what purpose are Italics employed in our translation of the Scriptures? Select examples. How are important words and phrases distinguished in writing?

Write a sentence containing some prominent word or phrase, and distinguish it from the rest by underlining it.

## VOWELS AND CONSONANTS.

§ 26. The most general division of letters is into vowels and consonants.

A vowel\* is a letter which represents a free and uninterrupted sound of the human voice. The vowels are a, e, i, o, u, and sometimes w and y.

A consonant; is a letter which represents a sound that is materially modified by some interruption during its passage through the organs of speech.

The consonants are b, c, d, f, g, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, x, z, and sometimes w and y. H, which is a simple breathing, is also classed with the consonants. ‡

What is the most general division of letters? What is a vowel? Enumerate the vowels. What is a consonant? Enumerate the con-

the articulating organs into contact with any part of the mouth. A consonant is an elemental sound which cannot be formed but by some contact between the parts of the mouth."—Day. See also Walker's Principles of English Pronunciation, Webster's Dictionary, and Wright's Orthography.

The etymology of the term consonant (sounding with) seems to have misled many grammarians, and thus aided in perpetuating the error here alluded to.

<sup>\* &</sup>quot;A vowel is an utterance of the voice receiving its peculiar character from the position of the organs; and a consonant is an action of the organs of speech, accompanied by breath or voice." — Smart.

"A vowel is an elemental sound which may be formed without bringing

<sup>†</sup> A consonant has commonly been defined "a letter which cannot be perfectly sounded without the aid of a vowel;" but this seems not to be the true idea of this class of letters. In pronouncing a syllable commencing with a consonant, a distinct sound is always uttered before the vowel sound is commenced; and we have many syllables in which the vowel, though written, is not heard at all in pronunciation, as in the words taken, burdened, which are pronounced taken, burdened. There are instances, also, in which a consonant is sounded as a distinct syllable, without the use even in which a consonant is sounded as a distinct syllable, without the use even of a written vowel, as in the words chas-m, rhyth-m.

<sup>‡ &</sup>quot;The claims of h to be regarded as a letter have been denied by many

W is a consonant when it is not preceded by a vowel in the same syllable; as in win, swift, thwart.

W is usually considered as a vowel, when it follows another vowel in the same syllable; as in new, how.

Y is a consonant when it begins a syllable, and is immediately followed by a vowel in the same syllable; as in yet, youth.

In all other cases, y is a vowel; as in very, rhyme, beryl.

- § 27. Vowel sounds are called *open* or *close*, according to the relative size of the opening through which the voice passes in forming them. Thus, a in *father*, and o in *nor*, are called *open* sounds, because they are formed by a wide opening of the organs of speech; while e in me, and u in rule, are called *close* sounds, because the organs are nearly closed in uttering them.
- § 28. Two vowels combined in the same syllable, are called a diphthong; as in coil.

A diphthong in which both vowels are sounded, is called a *proper* diphthong; as in oil, boy.

A diphthong in which only one of the vowels is sounded, is called an *improper* diphthong, or *digraph*; as in *rain*, *eat*, *believe*.

- § 29. Three vowels combined in the same syllable, are called a *triphthong*; as in eye, awe, lieu, beauty.
- § 30. Those consonant sounds which are formed by the vocal organs, during the passage of a mere breathing, are called aspirates. They are represented by p in map, t in hut, k in book, f in fine, s in see, th in thin, sh in ash, ch in church, and h in hero.

When is w a consonant? Examples. When a vowel? Examples When is y a consonant? Examples. When a vowel. Examples. Explain the terms open and close, as applied to vowels. Define a diphthong. Examples. A proper diphthong. Examples. An improper diphthong. Examples. A triphthong. Examples. What consonants are called aspirates? Enumerate them.

grammarians; and certainly, when it is remembered that the sound of this letter is produced by a mere emission of the breath, without any conformation of the organs of speech, this opinion would seem well-founded. There are others, however, who insist that there is no feature in the sound or qualities of this letter, which it does not possess in common with some other consonants; and consequently any attempt to invalidate its claim to the distinction, militates equally against them."—Brande's Ene.

§ 31. The cognate or corresponding sounds, which are respectively formed by a similar disposition of the organs, during the passage of the voice, are called vocal consonants. They are represented by b in but, d in did, g in go, v in vain, z in zero, th in that, z in azure, and j in just. In a natural whisper, these sounds cannot, of themselves, be readily distinguished from the corresponding aspirates. H has no cognate.

$$Cognates, \begin{cases} \text{Vocal} & b, \ d, \ g, \ v, \ z, * \ th, \dagger \ z, \S \ j. \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots \\ \text{Aspirate} & p, \ t, \ k, \ f, \ s, \ th, \ddagger \ sh, \ ch. \end{cases}$$

§ 32. The remaining sounds, m in man, n in no, ng in sing, l in look, r in race, w in world, and y in youth, though produced by the voice, may also be distinctly uttered in a whisper. They are hence called *intermediate* or neutral consonants. In forming the first three of these, -m, n, and ng, —the voice is made to pass principally through the nose, and they are on this account called nasal consonants.

§ 33. An aspirate and a vocal consonant cannot easily be pronounced in immediate combination. Hence, when they occur together in writing, one is generally changed, in pronunciation, into its cognate or corresponding sound. Thus, looked, dropped, confessed, are pronounced look't, drop't, confest.

A neutral consonant will readily unite in pronunciation with either an

aspirate or a vocal consonant; as in mend, meant; shelve, shelf.

## SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS.

[In performing the exercises which accompany the elementary sounds, the pupil should first pronounce one of the words containing a given element, and then utter distinctly the elementary sound by itself. The other examples should be uttered successively in the same manner.]

#### VOWELS.

§ 34. A has six sounds:—

1. Long; as in late, base.

What are vocal consonants? Enumerate them. What aspirate is the cognate of b?—of d?—of g in go?—of v?—of z in zero?—of th in that?—of z in azure?—of j in just? Which of the aspirates has no cognate? What are intermediate or neutral consonants? Enumerate them. Which are the nasal consonants? Why so called?

<sup>\*</sup> Z in zero. † Th in that. ‡ Th in thin. § Z in azure.

Exercise: — Vale, a; hale, a; mane, a; pace, a; lade, a; safe, a; range, a; ancient, a; display, a; relate, a.

2. Grave; as in father.

Exercise: — Mart, a; art, a; star, a; large, a; calm, a; alarm, a.

3. Broad; as in fall, walk.

Exercise: —All, a; call, a; hall, a; talk, a; war, a; malt, a; altar, a; water, a.

4. Short; as in man, hat.

Exercise: — An, a; can, a; lad, a; sat, a; and a; catch, a; carry, a; began, a.

5. The sound heard in care, hare.\*

Exercise: — Rare, a; fare, a; glare, a; careful, a; ensare, a.

6. Intermediate between a in man and a in father; as in grass, pass, branch. Many persons pronounce this a incorrectly, giving it either the grave or the short sound.†

Exercise: — Fast, a; ant, a; glass, a; prance, a; glance, a.

A is also employed to represent, —

- (1) The sound of o short; as, what.
- (2) The sound of e short; as, many.

What are the different sounds of a? Give an example of each; pronouncing first a word which contains it, and then the elementary sound by itself.

<sup>\*</sup> Walker, Webster, Sheridan, Fulton and Knight, Kenrick, Jones, and Nares, give to a in care the long sound of a, as in late. Page and Day give it the short sound of a, as in mat. See Page's Normal Chart, and Day's Art of Elocution.

Worcester and Perry make the sound of a in care a separate element; and this distinction is also recognized by Russell, Mandeville, and Wright. See Russell's Lessons in Enunciation, Mandeville's Elements of Reading and Oratory, and Wright's Orthography.

<sup>†</sup> Perry, Jones, Nares, Webster, and Day, give to a in grass the grave sound, as in father; while Walker, Jameson, and Russell, give it the short sound, as in man. But good speakers generally pronounce a in grass, plant, etc., as a distinct element, intermediate between the grave and the short sound.

<sup>&</sup>quot;To pronounce the words fast, last, glass, grass, dance, etc., with the proper sound of short a, as in hat, has the appearance of affectation; and to pronounce them with the full Italian sound of a, as in part, father, seems to border on vulgarity."—Worcester. This view is also adopted by Smart,

- § 35. E has three sounds:—
- 1. Long; as in me, complete.

Exercise: — We, e; he, e; scene, e; mete, e; scheme, e; supreme, e.

2. Short; as in let, men.

Exercise: — Fell, e; egg, e; pet, e; well, e; bless, e; ten, e; preface, e; forget, e.

3. Obtuse; as in term, fertile.\*

Exercise: — Fern, e; pert, e; mercy, e; alert, e; internal, e.

E is also employed to represent, -

- (1) The sound of a in care; as, there, where.
- (2) The sound of short i; as, England.

E is often silent, especially at the end of a word.

§ 36. I has two sounds: -

1. Long; as in pine, fine, excite.

This sound consists of two simple elements; the first of which is nearly the sound of a in past, and the second that of short i.

Exercise: — Ice, i; time, i; kind, i; ire, i; ripe, i; idle, i; incline, i.

2. Short; as in pit, live.

Exercise: — In, i; his, i; dip, i; fix, i; wish, i; since, i; intend, i; begin, i.

I is also employed to represent, —

- (1) The sound of long e; as, machine, police.
- (2) The sound of e in term; as, bird, affirm.

What are the sounds of e? Give examples of each. What are the vowel sounds of i? Give examples of each.

the most discriminating and accurate of modern English orthoepists, and by Fulton and Knight. The following is the language employed by Smart:—
"Surely, in a case like this, there can be no harm in avoiding the censure of both parties by shunning the extreme that offends the taste of each; and this medium sound in the case in question may be safely affirmed to be the one actually in use by the best speakers."

\*"Those who can perceive a difference between the sounds of a and o in the words far, cart, nor, border, and the proper short sounds of these letters in fat, carry, not, borrow, will not find it difficult to perceive an analogous difference between the sounds of e in learn, verse, mercy, and in men, very,

I is sometimes employed to represent the consonant sound of y; as in filial, christian, union, alien.

## § 37. O has three sounds: -

1. Long; as in note, remote.

Exercise: — Old, o; tone, o; globe, o; hose, o; rode, o; post, o; sofa, o.

2. Short; as in not, folly.

Exercise: - Stop, o; odd, o; lot, o; clock, o; doctrine, o.

3. Close; as in move, approve.

Exercise: - Do, o; to, o; improve, o.

O is also employed to represent, —

- (1) The sound of a in fall; as, nor, fortune.
- (2) The sound of e in term; as, world, attorney.
- (3) The sound of short i; as, women.
- (4) The sound of short u; as, son, done.
- (5) The sound of u in full; as, wolf.

In one and some of its derivatives, o has the sound of short u, preceded by the consonant sound of w.

§ 38. U has three sounds:—

1. Long; as in tune, lute, juvenile.

For the sake of greater ease in pronunciation, the consonant sound of y is often prefixed to the long sound of u; as in use, unite, universe.

Exercise: — Due, u; assume, u; reduce, u; union, u; useful, u; educate, u; opulent, u.

2. Short; as in run, shutter.

Exercise: — Bud, u; us, u; shut, u; dust, u; dumb, u; rebuff, u.

What consonant sound does i represent? Examples. What are the sounds of o? Give examples of each. What are the sounds of u?

merry; of i in fir, bird, and in pin, mirror; of u in hurdle, turn, and in tun, hurry; of y in myrtle, and in lyric. These vowels have all nearly or quite the same sound, as will be perceived in the words her, sir, fur, myrrh, herd, bird, surd; but their proper short sounds are widely different, when followed by r, as well as by other consonants, as in merry, mirror, Murray."—Worcester. See also Smart's Principles of Pronunciation, Mandeville's Reading and Oratory, and Barber's Grammar of Elocution.

3. Middle; as in full, bush.

Exercise: — Put, u; push, u; pulley, u; cushion, u.

U is also employed to represent, —

- (1) The sound of e in term; as, burn, furl.
- (2) The sound of short e; as, bury.
- (3) The sound of short i; as, busy.
- (4) The sound of o in move; as true, rude.

U has sometimes the consonant sound of w; as in persuade, languid.

- $\S$  39. W is never used as a vowel, except when it forms a part of a diphthong. It has then the sound of u. See Diphthongs.
  - § 40. Y, as a vowel, is employed to represent, -
    - (1) The sound of long i; as, thyme, rhyme.
    - (2) The sound of short i; as, hymn, crystal.
    - (3) The sound of e in term; as, myrrh, myrtle.
- § 41. In unaccented syllables, the vowel sounds are often so much obscured as to be hardly distinguishable. The following examples will serve to illustrate this remark:—altar, alter, murmur, martyr.

## DIPHTHONGS.

§ 42. The word ay, signifying yes, is a proper diphthong. The first of its component sounds is that of a in father; and the second, that of short i. It is often written aye.

Oi is generally used as a proper diphthong. It is composed of a in all, and i in pit; as toil, recoil.

Ou, when used as a proper diphthong, is composed of a in father, and o in move; as, house, around.

Ow, when a proper diphthong, represents the sound of ou in bound; as, town, crowd.

Give examples of each. What vowel sound does y represent? Give examples of each. What are the component sounds of the proper diphthong ay? Of what sounds is the proper diphthong oi composed? Examples. What sounds unite to form the proper diphthong ou? Examples. What sound is represented by the proper diphthong ow? Examples.

Oy represents the sound of the proper diphthong oi; as, boy, oyster.

#### CONSONANTS.

§ 43. B has but one sound, as in but.

Exercise: — Be, b; boat, b; orb, b; barb, b; double, b.

B is generally silent after m and before t, in the same syllable; as in dumb, debt.

§ 44. C, standing before a consonant, or before either of the vowels, a, o, u, or at the end of a word, represents the sound of k; as in care, conduct, athletic.

Before e, i, and y, c generally represents the sound of s; as in census, city.

Ce and ci, followed by another vowel, have often the sound of sh, as in ocean, social; and sometimes of she, as in associate, oceanic.

C has in some words the sound of z; as in sacrifice, suffice.

E is sometimes used after c, merely to give it the soft sound, as in lace, peaceable, practice; and u in like manner, to give it the hard sound, as in circuit.

C is sometimes silent; as in czar, muscle, indict.

Ch has generally the sound heard in church. But in Scripture proper names, with the exception of Rachel, in most words derived from the Greek, and in a few others, ch represents the sound of k; as in Enoch, Chaldea;—chorus, achromatic;—chemist, alchemy. In words derived from the French, ch represents the sound of sh; as in chaise, chagrin.

Ch is silent in drachm, yacht; and in schism and its derivatives.

§ 45. D has the sound heard in did.

Exercise: — Do, d; deep, d; aid, d; day, d; deduce, d; indeed, d.

When the termination ed immediately follows an aspirate, and is not pronounced as a separate syllable, it represents the sound of t; as in stopped, fixed.

In the first syllables of Wednesday and stadtholder, d is silent.

What sound is represented by the proper diphthong oy? Examples. How many sounds has b? Examples. What sounds is c used to represent? Give examples. Utter the principal sound of ch. What other sounds are represented by ch? Utter the sound of d.

§ 46. F has the sound heard in fate, scarf; except in of, where it represents the sound of v.

Exercise: — Fall, f; if, f; fife, f; field, f; safe, f; roof, f.

§ 47. G, before a, o, and u, has a hard sound; as in gate, gone. It is also hard before all the consonants, except g soft, as in glad; and at the end of a word, as in dog.

Exercise: — Gay, g; gold, g; gone, g; log, g; gig, g; regain, g.

Before e, i, and y, g usually represents the sound of j; as in ginger, gypsum.

In a few words adopted from the French and Italian, gn has the sound of ny; as in vignette, pronounced vinyet.

G is silent before m or n, in the same syllable; as in phlegm, consign,

gnomon. It is also silent in seraglio.

Gh, at the beginning of a word, represents the sound of g hard; as in ghost, ghastly. In other situations it is frequently silent; as in thought, plough.

Gh, at the end of a word, is sometimes pronounced like f, as in laugh, rough; and sometimes like g hard, as in burgh.

§ 48. H has the aspirate sound heard in he.

Exercise: — Hat. h; home, h; hall, h; harm, h; behave, h.

H is sometimes silent; as in heir, hour, honest, rhomb.

§ 49. J has the sound heard in jar; except in hallelujah, where it represents the consonant sound of y.

Exercise: - Joy, j; just, j; jar, j; jolt, j; judge, j.

§ 50. K is invariably hard; as in look.

Exercise: - King, k; kind, k; keep, k; bulk, k; elk, k.

K is silent before n in the same syllable; as in knife. In English words, k is never doubled; but this combination occurs in a few Scripture proper names; as, Habakkuk, Bakbakkar, Hakkoz, Bukkiah.

§ 51. L has but one sound; as in live, slow.

Utter the sound of f. What is the principal sound of g? Give examples. What other sound does g represent? Give examples. What sounds are represented by gh? Give examples. Utter the sound of h;—the sound of j;—the sound of h;—the sound of h.

Exercise: — Low, l; lark, l; lute, l; fail, l; flaw, l.

L is sometimes silent before a consonant; as in walk, calm.

§ 52. M has but one sound; as in man.

Exercise: — Aim, m; me, m; home, m; map, m; murmur, m.

M is silent when it stands at the beginning of a word, and is immediately followed by n; as in mnemonic, Mnason.

- § 53. N has two sounds: -
  - 1. The sound heard in no, nine. Exercise: — On, n; nay, n; name, n; alone, n.
  - 2. The ringing sound heard in bank, thing, singing. Exercise: —Think, n; ink, n; brink, n; drank, n; thank, n.

N is silent when it ends a syllable and is immediately preceded by m or l; as in hymn, column, kiln.

§ 54. P has the sound heard in pine; except in cupboard, where it represents the sound of b.

Exercise: — Pay, p; help, p; post, p; harp, p; people, p.

P is sometimes silent; as in psalm, pneumatics, receipt.

Ph generally represents the sound of f; as in philosopher. In Stephen it is pronounced like v.

In phthisic and its derivative phthisical, ph is silent.

- § 55. Q represents the sound of k, and is always followed by u, which, in this connection, generally has its consonant sound; as in quiet, conquest. But in some cases, qu is pronounced like k simply; as in conquer.
  - § 56. R\* has the sound heard in rare.

Exercise: - Run, r; read, r; robe, r; trust, r; harm, r; war, r; absorb, r.

Utter the sound of m. How many sounds has n? Give examples. Examples of the sound of p. What sound is generally represented by ph? What sound does a represent? Utter the sound of r.

<sup>\*</sup> The following quotations present a general view of the different opinions which exist among orthoëpists respecting this letter:—
"R has one constant sound in English."—Johnson. The same view is

adopted by Webster, Perry, Kenrick, Sheridan, Jones, Jameson, Knowles, and others.

<sup>&</sup>quot;The rough sound of r is rather a rhetorical refinement, than an elemen-

tary sound."—Frazee.
"Some have given the trilled r as an element. This is believed to be only

§ 57. S has a sharp, hissing sound; as in say.

Exercise: - So, s; sage, s; thus, s; mist, s; exist, s.

S is also used to represent the sound of z in zeal; as in rose, odds.

When s is immediately followed by the consonant sound of y, the two sounds combined are softened into the sound of sh, as in the words sure, censure, torsion; or into the sound of z in azure, as in the words leisure, ambrosial. When s is doubled, both letters often take the sound of sh; as in assure, passion.

S is silent in isle, demesne, corps, and viscount.

§ 58. T has the sound heard in tide.

Exercise: — At, t; soft, t; ten, t; time, t; intend, t.

Ti, followed by a vowel, has usually the sound of sh, or she; as in portion, partiality.

T is occasionally silent; as in christen, depot.

Th has two sounds:-

Vocal; as in then, they.
 Exercise: — This, th; though, th; beneath, th; other, th.

2. Aspirate; as in thing, thought.

Exercise: — Throng, th; thin, th; theme, th; faith, th.

§ 59. V has but one sound; as in vine.

Exercise: -Vie, v; view, v; prove, v; cave, v.

What sound has s? Give examples. What other sound is represented by s? Utter the sound of t. What are the sounds of th? Examples of each. Utter the sound of v.

a modification of the liquid r as heard in for. It may be trilled before a vocal element [vowel] in the same syllable, as in pray, practice. It should never be attempted in public, till it can be trilled gracefully and with facility. The excessive trilling of the r, as practised by some speakers, is a great fault."—Page's Normal Chart.

"R initial, or before a vowel, is always hard, though not rolled. R final, or before a consonant, is always soft, but never silent."—Russell. See also

Walker, Rush, and Barber.

"R should be trilled when it precedes a vowel, as in roll, crush; but when it follows a vowel, as in air, orb, it should be made smooth."—Comstock.

"In good metropolitan usage, this letter has its trilled consonant sound only when it begins, or is one of a combination of consonants that begin, a syllable; or when, finishing one syllable, it also begins the next: as in the following words, in which r is a real consonant, and stops the vowel, as any other consonant would do under the same circumstances: ar-id (equivalent to ar-rid), ber-ry, spir-it (equivalent to spir-rit), sor-ry, cur-ry. But when r, finishing one word or syllable, does not also serve to articulate the next, it is merely a guttural vibration, having the character of a vowel more than of a consonant."—Smart.

§ 60. W, when a consonant, has but one sound; as in way, swift. Exercise: — Wise, w; world, w; wander, w.

W is sometimes silent; as in write, whole, answer, sword.

Wh is pronounced as if written hw. Thus the words where, while, when, are pronounced hwere, hwile, hwen.\*

- § 61. X represents,
  - (1) The sound of ks; as in axle, execute
  - (2) The sound of gz; as in existence, exonerate.

At the beginning of a word, x takes the sound of z; as in Xenophon, xylography.

- § 62. Y, when a consonant, has but one sound; as in year, youth. Exercise: Yet, y; young, y; yoke, y; you, y.
- § 63. Z has usually the sound heard in zeal.

  Exercise: Zone, z; ooze, z; prize, z; zebra, z.

When z is followed by the consonant sound of y, the combination has the sounds heard in azure.

Exercise: - Seizure, z; glazier, z.

 $\S$  64. The great diversity of languages from which English words are derived, has occasioned much irregularity and inconsistency in our orthography. Our alphabet is both redundant and defective. C is represented by k or s; q by k; and x by ks or gz. The remaining twenty-three letters are employed to represent about forty elementary sounds. Many of the letters are used to denote several different sounds, and many of them are sometimes silent.

Utter the consonant sound of w. What sounds are represented by x? Examples of each. Utter the consonant sound of y;—the two sounds of x. What redundancy is there in the English alphabet? What defect?

See also Smart, Worcester, and Webster.

<sup>\* &</sup>quot;The Saxons, as Dr. Lowth observes, place the h before the w, as hwat; and this is certainly its true place; for in the pronunciation of all words beginning with wh, we ought to breathe forcibly before we pronounce the uv." Walker

the w."—Walker.

"Wh, which Dr. Rush has recognized as a distinct element, are but apparently such. They differ in no respect from the separate elements, w and h,—only that, in the modern orthography of words, they are inverted, as to their order. The ancient orthography of the language placed them as they stand in orthograp,—hw; thus hweat, hwen, etc."—Murdoch and Russell's Vocal Culture.

## GENERAL EXERCISES;

#### EMBRACING ALL THE ELEMENTARY SOUNDS.

[In performing these exercises, great care should be taken to give each element the same sound, when uttered by itself, that it has in the word which contains it. See the directions given on p. 33.]

## 6 65. VOWELS.

- 1. A in late; ei, ey.

  Name, a; favor, a; debate, a; weigh, ei; obey, ey.
- 2. A in father.
  Far, a; large, a; balm, a; arm, a; calm, a.
- 3. A in all; o. Call, a; walk, a; also, a; nor, o; border, o.
- 4. A in man.

  Hat, a; lad, a; cancel, a; outran, a.
- 5. A in care; e.
  Dare, a; snare, a; there, e; where, e.
- 6. A in past.
  Fast, a; mast, a; grass, a; branch, a; advance, a.
- E in me; i.
   We, e; era, e; complete, e; marine, i; caprice, i.
- 8. E in let; a, u.

  Met, e; express, e; any, a; many, a; bury, u.
- 9. E in term; i, o, u, y.
  Fern, e; fervid, e; mirth, i; world, o; burn, u; myrrh, y.
- 10. I in pine; y.
  Sign, i; life, i; decide, i; comply, y.
- 11. I in pit; e, o, u, y.

  Sit, i; if, i; timid, i; England, e; women, o; busy, u; hymn, y; symptom, y.

- 12. O in note; ew, au.
  Roll, o; remote, o; sew, ew; hautboy, au.
- 13. O in not; a.

  Blot, o; proxy, o; robber, o; what, a; was, a.
- 14. O in move; u.

  Prove, o; ado, o · who, o; rule, u.
- 15. U in tune; ew.
  Lute, u; human, u; new, ew; use, u; regulate, u.
- 16. U in run; o. But, u; up, u; sunder, u; done, o.
- 17. U in full; o.
  Pull, u; cushion, u; push, u; wolf, o.
- Oi\* in boil; oy.
  Coil, oi; soil, oi; boy, oy; destroy, oy.
- Ou † in pound; ow.

  Around, ou; thou, ou; house, ou; town, ow; crowd, ow.

# § 66. CONSONANTS.

- 18. B in but.

  Rob, b; glebe, b; by, b; bulb, b; imbibe, b.
- D in did.
   Day, d; door, d; made, d; hard, d; deduct, d.
- 20. F in f at e; ph, gh.

  Full, f; scarf, f; defend, f; ph antom, ph; rough, gh.
  - 21. G in go; gh. Give, g; green, g; goodness, g; ghost, gh; burgh, gh.
  - 22. H in he.

    Head, h; hall, h; heart, h; hope, h; behold, h.

<sup>\*</sup> Composed of a in all and i in pit.

<sup>†</sup> Composed of a in father and o in move.

- 23. J in joy; g, di. Jail, j; jest, j; jury, j; gesture, g; giant, g; soldier, di.
- 24. K in look; c, ch, q.

  Kid, k; ask, k; kindle, k; cube, c; faction, c; chasm, ch;

  quite, q.
- 25. L in live. Let, l; law, l; file, l; also, l.
- 26. M in man.

  Move, m; same, m; roam, m; complain, m.
- 27. N in no.
  New, n; one, n; begin, n; complain, n.
- 28. N in bank; ng.
  Sink, n; drink, n; anxious, n; song, ng; bring, ng.
- 29. *P* in *pine*.

  Put, *p*; pear, *p*; reap, *p*; comply, *p*.
- 30. R in rare.
  Rose, r; round, r; rain, r; far, r; world, r; declare, r.
- 31. S in say; c.

  See, s; fast, s; mistrust, s; cedar, c; city, c; police, c.
- 32. T in tide; ed.

  Tree, t; tent, t; time, t; ancient, t; mixed, ed; rocked, ed.
- 33. V in vine; f, ph.
  Vague, v; dove, v; live, v; remove, v; of, f; Stephen, ph.
- 34. W in way.
  Want, w; dwell, w; beware, w.

 $X^*$  in tax.

Box, x; text, x; axle, x; execute, x.

X† in exist.

Example, x; exert, x; executive, x; exonerate, x.

<sup>\*</sup> Composed of k and s.

<sup>†</sup> Composed of g and s.

- 35. Y in year; i, j.
  Ye, y; yield, y; youth, y; filial, i; union, i; hallelujah, j.
- 36. Z in zeal; s, c, x.
  Zenith, z; zealous, z; zone, z; is, s; rose, s; suffice, c;
  Xenophon, x.
- 37. Z in azure; s.
  Seizure, z; measure, s; leisure, s; ambrosial, s.
- 38. Th in this.

  They, th; scythe, th; thine, th; father, th.
- 39. Th in thin.

  Thorn, th; breath, th; truth, th; anthem, th.
- 40. Ch in church.
  Child, ch; check, ch; touch, ch; march, ch.
- 41. Sh in ship; ch, ti, ci, ce, s, si.

  Shine, sh; show, sh; chaise, ch; portion, ti; social, ci; ocean, ce; sure, s; torsion, si.

# WORDS AND SYLLABLES.

- § 67. A word is a letter or combination of letters, used as the sign of an idea; as, *I*, man, science, extemporaneous.
- § 68. A syllable is a word or a part of a word, which is pronounced by a single impulse of the voice; as, art, ar-tic-u-la-tion.

Most syllables are written with at least one vowel; but in many words the vowel of the final syllable is silent, as in sea-son, whis-tle, hap-pened.

What is a word? Examples. What is a syllable? Examples. Name a syllable which has no vowel sound.

A word of one syllable is called a monosyllable; one of two syllables, a dissyllable; one of three, a trisyllable; and one of more than three, a polysyllable; as, in, intend, intention, intentionally.

§ 69. Words are divided into two general classes; — primitive and derivative.

A primitive or radical word is one that is not derived from any other word or words in the language; as, hill, tree, kind, consider.

A derivative word is one that is formed from some primitive word or words in the language; as, hillock, kindness, inconsiderate.

§ 70. Words are also divided into two other classes, called simple and compound.

A simple word is one that is not formed by uniting other words; as, hand, fortune.

A compound word is one that is formed by joining two or more simple words, without materially modifying either; as, book-seller, rail-road, common-place book.

# Division of Words into Syllables.

§ 71. As a general principle, it may be observed, that the syllables of a word are those divisions which are made in a correct pronunciation of it. See § 268, Note.

The following are perhaps the only definite rules that can be given on this subject:—

- 1. Two consonants forming but one sound, as ng, ch, th, sh, ph, wh, are never separated. Thus, we write church-es, wor-thy, feather, ring-ing, a-while.
- 2. Compound words are commonly separated into the simple words of which they are composed; as, care-less, bee-hive, rail-road.
- 3. In expressing the past tense and perfect participle of regular verbs, the termination ed, though not always pronounced separately, is regarded in writing as a distinct syllable; as, lov-ed, burn-ed. See § 125, Rem. 2.

What is a word of one syllable called?—of two?—of three?—of more than three? Into what two general classes are words divided? What is a primitive word? Examples. A derivative word? Examples. A simple word? Examples. A compound word? Examples. What are the syllables of a word? What three rules are given respecting the division of words into syllables?

#### SPELLING.

§ 72. Spelling is the art of expressing words by their proper letters.

#### RULES FOR SPELLING.

I. Final consonants are generally single; as in man, book, repeat.

EXCEPTIONS.— The final letters in add, ebb, odd, egg, err, purr, burr, inn, butt, and buzz, are exceptions to this rule. We must also except f, l, and s, when immediately preceded by a single vowel, or by gu or qu and a single vowel. Under these circumstances, f, and, in monosyllables, l and s, are doubled, as in rebuff, call, guess, quill; except in as, has, was, gas, his, is, this, thus, us, yes, if, of and its compounds hereof, whereof, etc. Concerning l and s, in words of more than one syllable, no certain rule can be given.

REMARK 1.—C assumes k at the end of all monosyllables, except lac, zinc, and arc.

Rem. 2.—K was formerly used after c, in many words of more than one syllable; but it is now generally omitted, except in some few words, as attack, hillock.

II. Words ending in y preceded by a consonant, change y to i on receiving an addition,\* unless this addition is 's or a syllable beginning with i; as, carry, carries, carrier; fancy, fancied, fanciful; lady, lady's; carry, carrying.

III. Words ending in y preceded by a vowel, generally retain the y on taking an increase; as, boy, boys, boyish; journey, journeys; money, moneys; valley, valleys.

Exc. — Paid, laid, lain, saith, said, and most of their compounds, as unpaid, mislaid, are exceptions to this rule.

IV. Words ending in silent e, generally reject the e before an additional syllable beginning with a vowel; as, strive, striving; sense, sensible.

Exc. 1. — Words ending in oe, retain the final e; as shoe, shoeing; hoe, hoeing.

What is spelling? What is the rule respecting final consonants? Examples. What is the rule respecting words ending in y preceded by a consonant? What is the rule respecting words ending in y preceded by a vowel? Examples. What two rules are given respecting words ending in silent e? Examples.

<sup>\*</sup> The 2d, 4th, and 6th rules are not intended to include such additions as form compound words.

Exc. 2. — When e is preceded by g or c, it is retained before ous and able; as, courageous, peaceable.

Exc. 3.—The e is retained in a few words to prevent ambiguity; as in singeing, to distinguish it from singing; in dyeing (coloring), to distinguish from dying (expiring).

Exc. 4. — Words terminating in ee, drop the final letter only when the addition begins with e; as, see, seer, seeth; flee, fleest; agree, agreed.

Rem. — Words ending in ie, besides dropping e, change i to y, before an additional syllable beginning with i; as, lie, lying.

V. Words ending in silent e, generally retain e on receiving an additional syllable beginning with a consonant; as large, largely.

Exc. — Duly, truly, wholly, awful, and argument, are exceptions. The words judgment, abridgment, and acknowledgment, are also most frequently written without the e.

Rem. — Before fy and ty, e is sometimes changed to i; as, pure, purify, purity.

VI. Monosyllables, and words accented on the last syllable, ending in a single consonant preceded by a single vowel, generally double the final consonant on taking an additional syllable beginning with a vowel; as, tan, tanner; fulfil, fulfilling.

Exc. 1. — X, z, and k, are never doubled in English words; as, wax, waxen. See § 50.

Exc. 2. — When the accent is shifted, the final letter remains single; as, confer, conference. Excel follows the general rule; as in excellence.

Exc. 3. — The derivatives of gas have only one s; as, gases, gasify.

Rem. 1. — When a diphthong precedes the final letter, or when the accent is not on the last syllable, the consonant is not doubled on assuming an additional syllable; as, boil, boiling; visit, visitor.

Rem. 2. — Respecting words ending in l and p, which are not accented on the last syllable, usage is not settled. In many words these letters are now generally doubled; as, travel, traveller; worship, worshipper.

Rem. 3. — Many words ending in c, assume k on taking an additional syllable beginning with e, i, or y; as, frolic, frolicked, frolicking.

VII. Words ending in a double consonant, generally retain both consonants on receiving an addition; as, call, calls, caller, calling.

Exc. — Some words ending in  $\mathit{ll}$ , drop one  $\mathit{l}$  on receiving an increase beginning with a consonant; as,  $\mathit{full}$ ,  $\mathit{fulness}$ ,  $\mathit{fully}$ .

VIII. Compound words are usually spelled in the same manner

What is the rule respecting monosyllables and words accented on the last syllable, ending in a single consonant, preceded by a single vowel? What is the rule respecting words ending in a double consonant?—respecting compound words?

as the simple words of which they are composed; as, here-after, ice-house.

Exc. — An e is dropped in wherever; and words ending in ll often drop one l in composition, as al-ready, with-al, un-til.

§ 73. E is inserted before s, in forming the plural of nouns, and the third person singular of verbs, ending in ch soft, sh, s, x, z, o, or y preceded by a consonant; as, churches, wishes, hisses, flies.

Exc. — In the following words, e is commonly omitted in the plural: — canto, grotto, junto, memento, portico, quarto, octavo, solo, two, zero, tyro.

§ 74. Nouns ending in o preceded by another vowel, form the plural by the addition of s only; as, cameo, cameos; embryo, embryos; folio, folios; bamboo, bamboos.

§ 75. Many words in our language admit of two or more different modes of spelling; as, connection, connexion; chemistry, chymistry, chimistry; octahedron, octahedron, octohedron, octohedron. In such cases, the prevailing usage is to be learned by observing the practice of the standard authors of the present day, and by consulting the best dictionaries.

§ 76. In some kinds of writing, such as bills and inscriptions, symbols are often used to represent either whole words or parts of word; as XII, 18, 29th, etc. But in literary compositions, elegant usage generally rejects these, except in giving dates, and the several divisions of a subject.

Various other marks are employed in writing, which will be described

under the head of Punctuation.

# PART II.

# ETYMOLOGY.

§ 77. ETYMOLOGY treats of the classification of words, their derivation, and their various modifications.

## PARTS OF SPEECH.

§ 78. The different classes into which words are divided are called Parts of Speech.

There are in English eight\* parts of speech; namely, the Noun, the Adjective, the Pronoun, the Verb, the Adverb, the Preposition, the Conjunction, and the Interjection.

A Noun is a word used to express the name of an object; as, America, man, book, wisdom.

An Adjective is a word joined to a noun or pronoun, to qualify or define its meaning; as, honest men; ten days; this book.

A Pronoun is a word used to supply the place of a

Of what does Etymology treat? What are the different classes of words called? Enumerate the parts of speech. What is a noun? Examples. An adjective? Examples. A pronoun? Examples.

<sup>\*&</sup>quot;I adopt the usual distribution of words into eight classes, because, if

any number, in a thing so arbitrary, must be fixed upon, this seems to be as comprehensive and distinct as any." — Priestley.

The division of words into eight classes is also adopted by Butler, Frazee, Swett, Fowle, E. Oliver, Lindsay, Hort, M'Culloch, Connon, D'Orsey, Willard, Robbins, S. Barrett, Badgley, Day, Whiting, Weld, and others.

<sup>†</sup> For note respecting the articles, see p. 69.

noun; as, "When Cæsar had conquered Gaul, he turned his arms against his country."

A Verb is a word that expresses an assertion or affirmation; as, I am; I love; I am loved.

An Adverb is a word used to modify the sense of a verb, an adjective, or another adverb; as, "He is not understood;"—"A remarkably diligent boy;"—"She reads very correctly."

A Preposition is a word used to express the relation of a noun or pronoun depending upon it, to some other word in the sentence; as, "He went from Boston to Albany;"—" Washington was the father of his country."

A Conjunction is a word that is used to connect words or sentences; as, "Seven and five are twelve;"—
"Straws swim on the surface; but pearls lie at the bottom."

An Interjection is an exclamatory word, used merely to express some passion or emotion; as, Oh! ah! alas!

# THE NOUN.

§ 79. A Noun\* is a word used to express the name of an object; as, America, man, book, wisdom.

This part of speech not only embraces the names of material objects, as horse, tree, carriage; but it also includes the name of every thing that can be conceived to exist, as hope, virtue, strength.

What is a verb? Examples. An adverb? Examples. A preposition? Examples. A conjunction? Examples. An interjection? Examples. What is a noun? Examples. What names, besides those of material objects, are embraced under this part of speech? Examples.

<sup>\*</sup> Noun is derived from the Latin word nomen, which signifies a name.

NOUNS. 53

- § 80. Nouns are of two kinds; proper and common.
- 1. A proper noun is a name used to distinguish an individual object from others of the same class; as, George, Boston, Ontario, Vesuvius, January.

Rem. — The particular names of nations, ranges of mountains, and groups of islands, are generally classed with proper nouns; as, The Jews, The Andes, The Azores.

OBSERVATION. — The pupil should be careful to discriminate between a proper name used to distinguish an individual object, and the same word used to denote a class or species. Thus, when we say, "The Prussians are distinguished for their system of free schools," Prussians is a proper noun, because it is used to distinguish a particular nation from all other nations; but, in the sentence, "I saw several Prussians in Paris," the word Prussians becomes a common noun, because it may be applied in the same sense to any other portion of the whole class of individuals composing the kingdom of Prussia. So also in the expression, "He is the Cicero of his age," the word Cicero is employed to denote a class, and is applicable in this sense to other individuals in common with the celebrated Roman orator.

- 2. A common noun is a name that may be applied to any one of a whole class of objects; as, desk, house, town, scholar.
- § 81. Common nouns embrace also the particular classes, termed abstract, participial, and collective.
- 1. An abstract noun is the name of a quality considered apart from the object to which it belongs; as, hardness, strength, wisdom, benevolence. Thus, in the phrase, beautiful flower, the quality denoted by the word beautiful, when considered as separated from the object flower, is expressed by the abstract noun beauty.

Into what classes are nouns divided? What is a proper noun? Examples. What of the particular names of nations, groups of islands, etc.? Examples. Show how the same word may be either a proper or a common noun. Examples. What is a common noun? Examples. What is a common noun? Examples. What is an abstract noun? Illustrate. Examples.

2. A participial noun is a word that has the form of a participle, and performs the office of a noun; as, "They could not avoid submitting to this influence."

Rem.—There are a few words ending in ing, as morning, evening, which are not embraced in this class, since they are not derived from verbs.

3. A collective noun, or noun of multitude, is a name that denotes a collection of many individuals; as, school, flock, people, assembly.

#### EXERCISES.

§ 82. Ship, London, army, Alps, virtue, industry, Palestine, mountain, field, pleasure, France, assembly.

Which of the foregoing nouns are common? Which proper? Which abstract? Which collective?

"Paris is the metropolis of France."—"In the days of youth, the multitude eagerly pursue pleasure as their chief good."—"Industry is the law of our being. It is the demand of nature, of reason, and of God."—"This was said in the hearing of the witness.

Mention the nouns in the foregoing sentences. Which are common? Which proper? Which are abstract? Which participial? Which collective?

Write a sentence containing both a common and a proper noun. One containing an abstract noun; — a participial noun; — a collective noun.

## PROPERTIES.

§ 83. The properties belonging to nouns are gender, person, number, and case.

# GENDER.

§ 84. Gender is the distinction of objects in regard to sex. There are four\* genders;—the masculine, the feminine, the common, and the neuter.

What is a participial noun? Examples. What is a collective noun? Examples. What properties have nouns? What is gender? What are the different genders?

<sup>\*</sup> Since there are but two sexes, some critics have contended that we

NOUNS. 55

- 1. Nouns that denote males, are of the masculine gender; as, man, brother, king, father.
- 2. Nouns that denote females, are of the feminine gender; as, woman, sister, queen, mother.
- 3. Nouns that are applicable alike to both sexes, are of the common gender; as, parent, child, friend.
- 4. Nouns that denote objects neither male nor female, are of the neuter gender; as, rock, wind, paper, knowledge.
- Rem. 1.—Nouns of the masculine or feminine gender are frequently used in a general sense, including both sexes; as, "And with thee will I break in pieces the horse and his rider."—Jer. 51: 21. "Go to the ant, thou sluggard; consider her ways, and be wise."—Prov. 6: 6.
- REM. 2. When we speak of males and females of our own species without regard to sex, we generally employ a term in the masculine gender; as, "Man is mortal;" "The authors and poets of the age."
- Rem. 3.— In speaking of young children, and of animate objects whose sex is unknown, we often employ the neuter pronoun it; as, "The child was well when I saw it;"—"He caught the bird, but it soon escaped from him."
- Rem. 4. In the English language, the gender of nouns follows the order of nature; but in the Greek, Latin, and German tongues, the grammatical genders are frequently assigned without regard to sex; while in the French, Italian, etc., which have no neuter gender, every object is, of necessity, regarded as grammatically masculine or feminine.
- Rem. 5.—By a figure of speech called *Personification*, gender is sometimes attributed to objects without sex. Thus, the *sun*, *time*, *death*, etc., are usually considered as masculine; and *the earth*, a *ship*, *virtue*, etc., are commonly characterized as feminine.

Obs. 1. - This figurative mode of expression, by which we give life

What nouns are of the masculine gender? Examples. What of the feminine? Examples. What of the common? Examples. What of the neuter? Examples.

have properly no more than two genders. This reasoning would be satisfactory if the word gender were synonymous with sex; but the best grammarians have uniformly employed it in a less restricted sense, to express "distinction in regard to sex." As some names denote males, some females, some objects of either sex, and some objects of no sex, it is obvious that, in regard to sex, there must be four distinct classes of nouns. In designating these classes, grammarians have found it convenient to employ the terms masculine, feminine, common, and neuter gender. See Frazee, Goldsbury, Hall, R. C. Smith, Parker and Fox, Pickett, Goodenow, Fowle, Parkhurst, Sanborn, Willard, Webber, Perley, Felch, Barrett, C. Adams, Cooper, Granville, Beall, Booth, Crane, Maittaire, Pinnock, Smart, Sutcliffe, and De Sacy.

and sex to things inanimate, contributes greatly to the force and beauty of our language, and renders it, in this respect, superior to the polished languages of Greece and Rome.

Obs. 2. — No fixed rule can be given to determine, in all cases, which gender should be assigned to inanimate objects personified. Those which are distinguished for masculine qualities, as energy, boldness, or strength, are generally regarded as masculine; and those which are distinguished for feminine qualities, as beauty, mildness, or timidity, are generally characterized as feminine. Abstract nouns, and the names of ships, cities, and countries, are usually considered as feminine.

Examples: — "They arrived too late to save the ship; for the violent current had set her more and more upon the bank."—Irving.

- "Statesmen scoffed at Virtue, and she avenged herself by bringing their counsels to nought."—Bancroft.
- "Earth, with her thousand voices, praises God."—Coleridge.
- "Where rolls the *Oregon*, and hears no sound, Save his own dashings."—Bryant.

"The oak

Shall send his roots abroad and pierce thy mould."—Ibid.

"And see where surly Winter passes off,

Far to the north, and calls his ruffian blasts."—Thomson.

§ 85. The distinction between males and females is expressed in three different ways.

## 1. By the use of different words: —

Masculine.	Feminine.	Masculine.	Feminine.
Beau Boy Brother Buck Drake	belle girl sister doe duck	Lad Landlord Lord Male Man	lass landlady lady female woman
Earl Father Friar or monk Gander Gentleman Hart Horse Husband	countess mother nun goose lady roe mare wife	Master Master Nephew Papa Son Stag Uncle Wizard	mistress miss niece mamma daughter hind aunt witch
King	queen		

# 2. By a difference of termination: -

Masculine.	Feminine.	Masculine.	Feminine.
Abbot	abbess	Adulterer	adulteress
Actor	actress	Ambassador	ambassadress
Administrator	administratrix	Arbiter	arbitress

In what three ways is the distinction between males and females expressed? Examples of each.

Author	authoress	Landgrave	landgravine
Baron	baroness	Lion	lioness
Bridegroom	bride	Marquis	marchioness
Benefactor	benefactress	Margrave	margravine
Caterer	cateress	Negro	negress
Chanter	chantress	Patron	patroness
Conductor	conductress	Peer	peeress
Count	countess	Poet	poetess
Czar	czarina	Prior	prioress
Dauphin	dauphiness	Prophet	prophetess
Deacon	deaconess	Protector	protectress
Don	donna	Priest	priestess
Duke	duchess	Prince	princess
Emperor	empress	Shepherd	shepherdess
Enchanter	enchantress	Songster	songstress
Executor	executrix	Sorcerer	sorceress [tana
Giant	giantess	Sultan	sultaness or sul-
Governor	governess	Tailor	tailoress
Heir	heiress	Testator	testatrix
Hero	heroine	Tiger	tigress
Hunter	huntress	Tutor	tutoress
Host	hostess	Viscount	viscountess
Instructor	instructress	Votary	votaress
Jew	Jewess	Widower	widow

3. By prefixing another word: —

Masculine.Feminine.Masculine.Feminine.Man-servantmaid-servantHe-goatshe-goatMale-childfemale-child

Some words are used only in the feminine; as, Amazon, brunette, dowager, shrew, syren, virago.

## PERSON.

§ 86. Person is that property of nouns and pronouns which distinguishes the speaker, the person or thing addressed, and the person or thing spoken of.

Nouns have three persons; — the first, the second, and the third.

- 1. The first person denotes the speaker; as, "The salutation of me, Paul, with mine own hand."
  - 2. The second person denotes the person or thing spoken

What is person? Name the persons. What does the first person denote? Examples. The second? Examples.

to; as, "These are thy glorious works, *Parent* of good;" "Come, gentle *Spring*."

3. The third person denotes the person or thing spoken of; as, "Dependence and obedience belong to youth."

Rem. — The third person is occasionally employed for the first or second. Thus, Solomon, addressing the Deity, says of himself, "Thy servant is in the midst of thy people, which thou hast chosen." So also, Moses, in narrating the events of his own life, speaks of himself just as he would speak of any other person. In the following example, the third person is employed for the second: — "And Jonathan spake good of David unto Saul his father, and said unto him, Let not the king sin against his servant, against David."

#### EXERCISES.

§ 87. Mention the gender of each of the following nouns:—
Bell, uncle, cherry, girl, neighbor, sister, tree, rose, grass.

Mention three nouns in the masculine gender;—three in the feminine;—three in the common;—three in the neuter. Give an example of a noun in the first person;—in the second;—in the third.

Write a sentence containing a noun in the masculine gender;—in the feminine;—in the common;—in the neuter. One containing a noun in the first person;—in the second;—in the third.

#### NUMBER.

§ 88. Number is the distinction of one from more than one.

Nouns have two numbers; — the singular and the plural.

- 1. The singular number denotes but one object; as, day, book, volume.
- 2. The plural number denotes more objects than one; as, days, books, volumes.

What does the third person denote? Examples. What is number? What numbers have nouns? What does the singular number denote? Examples.

NOUNS. 59

§ 89. The plural of nouns is generally formed by adding s or es to the singular.

1. Words ending in a sound which will unite with the sound of s, form the plural by adding s only; as, herd, herds; tree, trees.

2. Words ending in a sound which will not unite with the sound of s, form the plural by adding es; as, fox, foxes; lash, lashes. See § 73.

REM. 1.—But words ending in silent e, whose last sound will not combine with the sound of s, add s only for the plural; as, rose, roses; voice, voices.

REM. 2.—Most nouns ending in o preceded by a consonant, form the plural by the addition of es; as, cargo, cargoes; hero, heroes; but the following nouns are commonly written in the plural with s only:—canto, grotto, junto, memento, portico, quarto, octavo, solo, two, tyro, zero. There are also a few others, with respect to which, usage is not uniform.

Rem. 3. — Several nouns ending in f or fe, form the plural by substituting ves, for the termination in the singular; as, loaf, loaves; life, lives; beef, beeves; shelf, shelves; knife, knives. Others, as chief, dwarf, fife, grief, gulf, handkerchief, hoof, proof, roof, reproof, safe, scarf, strife, surf, turf, and most of those ending in ff, form the plural regularly; as, gulf, gulfs; muff, muffs. Staff has staves in the plural, but its compounds are regular; as, flagstaff, flagstaffs.

Rem. 4. — Nouns ending in y after a consonant, form the plural by changing y to ies; as, lady, ladies. But nouns ending in y after a vowel, form the plural regularly; as, day, days.

Obs. — Many words ending in y were formerly spelled with ie in the singular; as, glorie, vanitie. The termination ie, in the singular, is now laid aside for y, while the old plural termination ies, is retained; as, glory, glories; vanity, vanities.

REM. 5.— The plurals of the following nouns are variously formed:—man, men; woman, women; child, children; ox, oxen; mouse, mice; tooth, teeth; goose, geese; foot, feet; brother, brothers (when applied to persons of the same family); brother, brethren (when applied to persons of the same society or profession); die, dies (stamps for coining); die, dice (small cubes for gaming); genius, genii (aërial spirits); genius, geniuses (men of genius); pea, pease (the species); pea, peas (the seeds as distinct objects); penny, pence (in computation); penny, pennies (as distinct species of coin).

How is the plural of nouns generally formed? What words form the plural by adding s only? Examples. What words by adding es? Examples. Give the plural of the following nouns: — Man, woman, child, ox, mouth, tooth, goose, foot, brother, die, genius, pea, penny.

Rem. 6.— Spoonful, mouse-trap, camera-obscura, Ave-Maria, and other similar compound nouns, form the plural regularly; as, spoonfuls, mouse-traps, camera-obscuras, Ave Marias. But words composed of an adjective and a noun, or of two nouns connected by a preposition, generally form the plural by adding s to the first word; as, court-martial, courts-martial; knight-errant, knights-errant; aid-de-camp, aids-de-camp; cousin-german, cousins-german; son-in-law, sons-in-law.

Examples:—"Those who are carried down in coachfuls to Westminster-Hall."—Addison. "Captains Orme and Morris, the two other aids-de-camp, were wounded and disabled."—Sparks. "The lunacy as to knights-errant remaining unabated."—Hallam.

REM. 7.—Letters and numeral figures generally form the plural by adding an apostrophe with the letter s; as, Twelve a's; three 5's. The plural of words, considered as words merely, is formed in the same manner.

Examples: — "I busied myself in crossing my t's and dotting my i's very industriously." — Willis. "The dividend contains two x's, two y's, and two z's." — Young's Algebra. "Cast all the 9's out of the sum of the figures in each of the two factors." — Hutton's Mathematics. "Who, that has any taste, can endure the incessant, quick returns of the also's, and the likewise's, and the moreover's, and the however's, and the notwithstanding's?" — Campbell's Phil. of Rhet.

Rem. 8. — Many nouns adopted from foreign languages, retain their original plurals: —

Alumnus	alumni	Beau	beaux
Amanuensis Analysis	amanuenses analyses	Calx	{ calces } calxes
Animalculum Animalcule (Eng.)	animalcula*	Cherub	{ cherubim } cherubs
Antithesis	antitheses	Chrysalis	chrysalides
Apex	{ apices	Crisis	crises
	apexes (appendices	Criterion	{ criteria } criterions
Appendix	appendixes	Datum	data
Arcanum	arcana	Desideratum	desiderata
Automaton	{ automata	Diæresis	diæreses
Axis	automatons axes	Dogma	{ dogmas } dogmata
	( banditti	Effluvium	effluvia
Bandit	bandits	Ellipsis	ellipses ·
Basis	bases	Emphasis	emphases

What rule is observed in forming the plural of letters, numerical figures, and words considered merely as words? Examples.

<sup>\* &</sup>quot;Animalculæ is a barbarism." - Smart, adopted by Worcester.

Encomium	{ encomiums } encomia	Memorandum	{ memoranda } memorandums
Ephemeris Erratum	ephemerides errata	Metamorphosis Miasma	metamorphoses miasmata
Focus	foci (formulas	Momentum	momenta momentums
Formula	formulæ	Monsieur	messieurs
Fungus	fungi	Nebula Oasis	nebulæ oases
Genus	funguses genera	Parenthesis	parentheses
Gymnasium	{ gymnasia } gymnasiums	Phasis Phenomenon	phases phenomena
Hypothesis	hypotheses	Radius	radii
Ignis fatuus	ignes fatui	Scoria	scoriæ
Index	indices (refer- ring to alge-	Scholium	scholia scholiums
	braic quanti- ties)	Seraph	seraphim seraphs
Index	indexes (point-	Speculum	specula
	ers, or tables of contents)	Stamen	stamens stamina
Lamina	laminæ	Stimulus	stimuli
Larva	larvæ ( media	Stratum Thesis	strata theses
Medium	mediums	Vortex	vortices

REM. 9.— Some nouns have the same form in both numbers; as, deer, sheep, swine, trout, salmon, congeries, series, species, means, odds, bellows; ethics, mathematics, metaphysics, pneumatics, optics, and other similar names of sciences.

REM. 10. — There are also several nouns of number, which do not commonly vary their forms in the plural; as, "Six dozen;" "Three score and ten."

REM. 11.—The words horse, foot, and infantry, denoting bodies of soldiers, are singular in form, but plural in signification. Cavalry is often used in the same manner. The words cannon, sail, and head, are also frequently employed in a plural sense.

Examples: — "Nelson now proceeded to his station with eight sail of frigates under his command." — Southey. "A body of a thousand horse was sent forward to reconnoitre the city." — Prescott.

"He ordered two cannon to be fired." — Irving.

Rem. 12. — The following words, though sometimes used as singular nouns, are more properly plural: — alms, amends, pains, riches, wages.

REM. 13. — The following are used only in the plural: —

Annals	Calends	Goods	
Archives	Clothes	Hatches	Manners
Ashes	Drawers (an ar-	Hose (stockings)	Minutiæ
Assets	ticle of dress)	Hysterics	Morals
Billiards	Dregs	Ides	Nippers
Bitters	Embers	Lees	Nones
Bowels	Entrails	Letters (literature)	Orgies
Breeches	Exuviæ	Literati	Pincers

PleiadsShearsThanksVespersPoliticsSnuffersTidingsVictualsScissorsStatisticsTongsVitalsShambles

Rem. 14. — Nouns denoting objects which do not admit of plurality, are used only in the singular; as, gold, silver, wheat, molasses, wine, flour,

industry, pride, wisdom.

OBS.— When, however, different kinds or varieties are spoken of, words of this class sometimes take the plural form; as, "The teas of China."— "He also acquired a lucrative monopoly of wines." — Bancroft. In these examples, the different species or classes are signified, and not a number of individual objects of the same class.

Rem. 15.—The word news is now regarded as singular, though it was formerly used in both numbers. Shakspeare has it most frequently in the plural.

Rem. 16. — Proper names are sometimes pluralized like other nouns; as, The two *Scipios*, The *Howards*, The *Johnsons*; but these plural names are not used to designate individuals, and may with more propriety be classed with common nouns.

Rem. 17.—Proper names ending in y preceded by a consonant, are sometimes pluralized by adding s to the singular, as The Henrys, The Ptolemys; but the regular form, as The Henries, The Ptolemies, is to be preferred. Proper names ending in o preceded by a consonant, are most frequently pluralized by adding s to the singular; as, The Catos, The Ciceros.

Rem. 18.—In expressing the plural of a proper name and a title, taken as one complex noun, good writers most frequently annex the plural termination to the title only; as, "The Misses Smith." This form is therefore to be preferred.\*

Examples: — "The Misses Barrett." — Graham's Magazine. "The Misses Vanhomrigh." — Edinb. Journal. "The Misses Wood." — Boston Courier. "The Misses Fellows." — H. Winslow. "The Messrs. Carey." — J. G. Palfrey. "The Messrs. Abbott." — Judge Hubbard. "The Messrs. Harper." — N. A. Review. "Messrs. Percy." — Southey. "The celebrated Misses Davidson." — R. W. Griswold.

What of proper names, pluralized? How do writers most frequently form the plural of a proper name and a title, taken as a complex noun? Examples.

<sup>\*</sup>In forming the plural of proper names to which titles are prefixed, usage is still unsettled. While a decided majority of our popular writers pluralize the title and not the name, as "The Misses Smith," there is also

NOUNS. 63

REM. 19. — The proper names of nations, societies, groups of islands, and chains of mountains, are generally plural; as, The French, The Moravians, The Azores, The Alps, The Andes.

#### EXERCISES.

§ 90. Give the number of each of the following nouns: -

Cloud, vices, knives, life, lyceum, mirth, men, feet, brother.

Give the plural of the following nouns:-

Month, lion, church, poet, woman, thought.

Give the number of the following nouns: -

Oxen, brethren, die, cherubim, data, hypotheses, beaux, analysis, series, means, mathematics, alms, wages, ashes, scissors.

Give the plural of the following nouns: -

Penny, pailful, father-in-law, amanuensis, focus, stratum, erratum, genus, phenomenon.

Write a sentence containing two or more nouns in the singular number; one containing two or more nouns in the plural.

## CASE.

§ 91. Case denotes the relation of nouns and pronouns to other words.

Nouns have four cases; — the nominative, the possessive, the objective, and the independent.\*

## What is case? What cases have nouns?

a large class of writers equally reputable, that pluralize the name and not the title, as "The Miss Smiths."

Examples: — "The Miss Byleses." — Miss Leslie. "The Miss Hornecks." — Irving. "The two Miss Flamboroughs." — Goldsmith.

Besides the two forms already exhibited, there is still another, in which the plural termination is annexed to both the name and the title; as, "The Misses Smiths." This form, though not very common, is occasionally employed by the best writers.

Examples: — "The Messrs. Harpers." — N. A. Review. "The Misses Mores." — B. B. Edwards. "The two Misses Beauvoirs." — Black-

wood's Magazine.

\*The nominative case is defined by the best grammarians, to be "that form or state of a noun or pronoun which denotes the subject of a verb;" and since a noun or pronoun, used independently, cannot at the same time

and and a see the state

This season, no centence can be from

Inties the deserved the Housing

ETYMOLOGY. § 92. The nominative case denotes the subject of a finite verb; as, "Birds fly;" - "Life is short."

All parts of the verb are called finite, except the infinitive and the par-

- § 93. The possessive case denotes ownership or possession; as, "John's book;" — "The sun's rays."
- § 94. The possessive singular of nouns is generally formed by adding an apostrophe, with the letter s, to the nominative; as, nom. man; poss. man's.
- REM. 1. The possessive of singular nouns ending in the sound of s or z, is sometimes formed by adding only the apostrophe; as, "Achilles' shield." In poetry, this omission of the apostrophic s is fully sanctioned by usage; though the regular form is also frequently employed. In prose writings, the s may be omitted when its use would occasion a disagreeable succession of hissing sounds.

Examples: - "But we are Moses' disciples." - John 9: 28.

" Achilles' shield his ample shoulders spread,

Achilles' helmet nodded o'er his head."-Pope.

"A train of heroes followed through the field,

Who bore by turns great Ajax' seven-fold shield."—Ibid.

"As for Tibullus's reports,

They never passed for law in courts."—Swift.

OBS. — The learner will observe that in pronouncing the word Moses's, with the additional s, the sound of z occurs three times in immediate succession; while in such expressions as "Davies's Surveying," the sound of z occurs only twice, the third s retaining its proper sound.

REM. 2. — When the use of the additional s does not occasion an

What does the nominative case denote? Examples. The possessive? Examples. How is the possessive singular generally formed? Examples. Under what circumstances is the additional s omitted? Examples.

be employed as "the subject of a verb," there is a manifest impropriety in

regarding it as a nominative.
"Is there not as much difference between the nominative and independent case, as there is between the nominative and objective? If so, why class them together as one case?"—S. R. Hall.
"Nouns have four cases;—the nominative, possessive, objective, and independent."—Felton.

my church will

So also Kennion, Parkhurst, Fowle, J. Flint, Goodenow, Bucke, Hazen, Goldsbury, Peirce, Chapin, S. Alexander, P. Smith, and Weld.

NOUNS. 65

unpleasant succession of hissing sounds, the regular form is generally to be preferred.\*

Examples: — "Mrs. Hemans's fine lines on the death of Fergus."—
N. A. Review. "Collins's Odes."—Southey. "The character of
Douglas's original poetry."—Hallam. "The original remained
in manuscript until Sands's writings were collected."—R. W.
Griswold. "Edwards's work on the Will."—Channing. "Stephens's Incidents of Travel."—N. A. Review. "Erasmus's Dialogues."—Macaulay. "Sandys's Sermons."—Hallam.

Obs. — In some expressions of frequent occurrence, usage has decided in favor of rejecting the additional s, contrary to the general rule. Thus, we say, "For conscience' sake," and not "For conscience's sake."

REM. 3. — Plural nouns ending in s, form the possessive by adding an apostrophe only; as, nom. fathers; poss. fathers'.

REM. 4. — Plural nouns that do not end in s, form the possessive by adding both the apostrophe and s; as, nom. men; poss. men's.

REM. 5. — The import of the possessive may, in general, be expressed by the preposition of. Thus, for "Man's wisdom," we may say, "The wisdom of man."

REM. 6. — The sign 's is a contraction of es or is. Thus, man's, king's, were formerly written mannes, kinges.†

How do plural nouns ending in s, form the possessive? Examples. How do plural nouns that do not end in s, form the possessive? Examples.

\* With respect to the manner of forming the possessive of singular nouns ending in s, the usage of good writers is, to a considerable extent, divided. In a collection of nearly a thousand examples, from the productions of several hundred different authors, about two thirds of the number retain the additional s, while the rest reject it. The rule given above has, therefore, for its support, a decided preponderance of reputable usage. It may, however, be remarked, that the apostrophic s is at present more frequently omitted than formerly; and it is not improbable, that in the course of another century, usage may require the rejection of the s altogether, after words ending in the sound of s or z.

† Several respectable authors and critics have fallen into the error of regarding this possessive termination as a contraction of the pronoun his. "The same single letter (s) on many occasions, does the office of a whole word, and represents the his or her of our forefathers."—Addison.

It is true that the word his was frequently written after words to form the possessive, by Spencer, Dryden, Pope, and other popular authors, during a period of two or three centuries, as, "Christ his sake," "Socrates his rules;" but the present contracted form of the possessive was in use still earlier, and our ablest philologists have uniformly referred its origin to the old Saxon termination.

"From the introduction of the Saxons into this island, to the Norman

- § 95. The objective case denotes the object of a transitive verb or a preposition; as, "Boys love play;" --"The queen of England."
- § 96. The independent case denotes that the noun or pronoun is used absolutely, having no dependence on any other word; as, "Your fathers," where are they?" -"The treaty being concluded, the council was dissolved;" -"There is no terror, Cassius, in your threats;"-"Webster's Dictionary;" - "Liberty! Freedom! Tyranny is dead!"

REM. - The nominative, objective, and independent cases of nouns are the same in form, being distinguished only by their relation to other words.

Nom. Obj. John struck James. Nom. Obj. James struck John.

Here the meaning is reversed by the interchange of the nouns; the nominative or agent being indicated by its preceding the verb, and the object of the action by its following the verb. A noun in the independent case is distinguished by its denoting neither subject, object, nor possessor.

#### DECLENSION.

§ 17. To decline a noun, is to express its cases and numbers.

	Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	Father	fathers	Man	men
Poss.	Father's	fathers'	Man's	men's
Obj.	Father	fathers	Man	men
Ind.	Father	fathers	Man	men

What does the objective case denote? Examples. What does the independent case denote? Examples. What is it to decline a noun?

conquest, the Saxon genitive was in universal use. From the latter period to the time of Henry II. (1170), though the English language underwent some alterations, we still find the Saxon genitive. In Gavin Douglass, who lived in the beginning of the sixteenth century, we find is instead of es, thus, faderis hands. In the time of Henry the Eighth, we find, in the works of Sir T. More, both the Saxon and the English genitive; and in a letter written in 1559, by Maitland of Lethington, the English genitive frequently occurs. Had this genitive, then, been an abbreviation for the noun and the pronoun his, the use of the words separately would have preceded their abbreviated form in composition. This, however, was not the case."—Crombie.

See also Wallis's Grammatica Linguæ Anglicanæ, Hickes's Thesaurus, Brightland, Fisher, British Grammar, Fenning, Lowth, Priestley, Ash, Brittain, Grant, Sutcliffe, Latham, Johnson, and Webster.

\* For a particular description of the different classes of words in the independent case, see the Remark under the 4th Rule of Syntax.

REM.— "Susan used Eliza's book." Susan is here the subject of the verb, and is therefore in the nominative case; Eliza's is in the possessive case, because it denotes the owner of the book; book is the object of the action expressed by the verb used, and is therefore in the objective case.

### EXERCISES.

§ 98. "Romulus founded the city of Rome."—"The king's heart is in the hand of the Lord."—"The prophets, do they live forever?"—"A wise man's anger is of short continuance."—"Genius lies buried on our mountains and in our valleys."—"Columns, arches, pyramids,—what are they but heaps of sand?"—"As virtue is its own reward, so vice is its own punishment."—"Venerable men! you have come down to us from a former generation."

Point out the nouns in the foregoing sentences, and give the case of each, with the reason. Give also the gender, person, and number of each, with the reasons.

Write the possessive singular and the possessive plural of the following nouns: Man, child, body, day, needle.

Write one or more sentences, containing examples of nouns in all the different cases.

### THE ADJECTIVE.

- § 99. An Adjective\* is a word joined to a noun or pronoun, to qualify or define its meaning; as, honest men; ten days; this book.
- § 100. Adjectives may be classed under two general divisions; descriptive and definitive.†

What is an adjective? Examples. What are the principal classes of adjectives?

<sup>\*</sup> The term adjective is derived from the Latin word adjectus, which signifies added to.

<sup>† &</sup>quot;Adjectives are of two kinds, defining and describing adjectives."—Cardell. See also Butler, R. W. Green, and Goodenow.

- 1. A descriptive adjective is one that expresses some quality or property of the noun or pronoun to which it belongs; as, a dutiful child; a faithful friend; large trees.
- 2. A definitive adjective is one that defines or limits the meaning of the noun or pronoun to which it belongs; as, three days; these books; the\* lesson; all men.
- § 101. These two general classes of adjectives may also be divided into several others, of which the following are the most important:—
- 1. A proper adjective is one that is derived from a proper name; as, American, Ciceronian.
- 2. A numeral adjective is one that is used to express number; as, one, two, three; first, second, third.

One, two, three, etc., are also denominated cardinal adjectives; and first, second, third, etc., ordinal adjectives.

- 3. A pronominal adjective is a word that partakes of the nature of the pronoun and the adjective.
- Rem. 1.— When used to define a noun expressed, it is parsed as an adjective; but when employed as a substitute for a word or phrase, it is parsed as a pronoun. Thus, in the sentence, "Some cried one thing, and some another," one is to be regarded as an adjective; but, in the expression, "Every one has his peculiar trials," one performs the office of a pronoun or substitute.
- Rem. 2.— The principal pronominal adjectives are each, every, either, neither, this, that, these, those, all, any, one, other, another, none, some, such, same, both, several, few, much, many.
- · Rem. 3.— Each, every, either, and neither, are called distributives, because they denote the persons or things that make up a number, considered separately; as, "Each man in his order."

What is a descriptive adjective? Examples. What is a definitive adjective? Examples. Into what other classes are adjectives divided? What is a proper adjective? Examples. A numeral adjective? Examples. A pronominal adjective? When is a pronominal adjective parsed as an adjective, and when as a pronoun? Illustrate. What are some of the principal pronominal adjectives? Which of the pronominal adjectives are called distributives, and why?

<sup>\*</sup> See note respecting the articles, p. 69.

REM. 4.— This, that, these, and those, are called demonstratives, because they point out precisely the objects to which they refer.

REM. 5. - Both denotes two objects taken together. Another is composed of an and other. None is used in both numbers.

REM. 6. - Other is thus declined :-

Singular.	Plural.
Nom. Other	others
Poss. Other's	others'
Obj. Other	others
Ind. Other	others

REM. 7. - Another and one are also declined, but another is used only in the singular.

4. A participial adjective is a word that has the form of a participle, and performs the office of an adjective; as, a beloved child; a lasting impression. See Rem. under § 81.

### ARTICLES. \*

 $\delta$  102. The definitive adjectives a or an, and the, are denominated articles.

1. A or an is called the *indefinite* article, because it does

Which demonstratives, and why? How is other declined? What is a participial adjective? Examples. What words are called articles? Which is called an indefinite article, and why?

"A or an, and the, are not a distinct part of speech in our language."-Webster.

<sup>\*</sup> The most approved definition of the article is equally applicable to the words one, that, this, these, and other definitives; and any definition of the adjective, which is sufficiently comprehensive to include the definitives this, that, etc. will include also the words a and the. With what propriety, then, can the articles be separated from other definitives, and made to constitute a distinct part of speech?

<sup>&</sup>quot;The words a or an, and the, are reckoned by some grammarians a separate part of speech; but, as they in all respects come under the definition of the adjective, it is unnecessary, as well as improper, to rank them as a class by themselves."-Connon.

<sup>&</sup>quot;It is unnecessary, in any language, to regard the articles as a distinct part of speech."—Buttmann's Greek Grammar.

The articles are also ranked with adjectives by Priestley, E. Oliver, Bell, Elphinston, M'Culloch, D'Orsey, Lindsay, Joel, Greenwood, Smetham, Dalton, King, Hort, Buchanan, Crane, J. Russell, Frazee, Cutler, Perley, Swett, Day, Goodenow, Willard, Robbins, Felton, Snyder, Butler, S. Barrett, Badgley, Howe, Whiting, Davenport, Fowle, Weld, and others.

not indicate any particular object; as, a book; that is, any book.

- 2. The is called the definite article, because it indicates some particular object; as, the book; that is, some particular book.
- Rem. 1.—A is used before words beginning with a consonant sound; as, a tree, a house, a union, a ewe, a youth, a eulogy, a one, a world.

Obs. — The words union, ewe, and eulogy, commence with the consonant sound of y; and the word one commences with the consonant sound of w.

Rem. 2. — An is used before words beginning with a *vowel* sound; as, an eagle, an hour, an outline.

Rem. 3. — An is also employed, by most writers, before words beginning with h not silent, when the accent falls on the second syllable.

Examples: — "An historical piece." — Irving. "An historical subject." — Goldsmith. "An hereditary government." — E. Everett. "An harmonious whole." — Southey.

Rem. 4. — A or an is the Saxon word ane or an, signifying one.

### COMPARISON.

§ 103. The *comparison* of adjectives is the variation by which they express different degrees of quality.

There are three degrees of comparison; — the positive, the comparative, and the superlative.

1. The positive degree\* is that which expresses the simple state of the quality; as, good, wise.

Which is called the definite article, and why? Before what words is a used? Examples. When is an used? Examples. What rule is observed respecting the form of the article before a word beginning with h not silent? Examples. What is the comparison of adjectives? What are the different degrees? What is the positive degree? Examples.

<sup>\*</sup>It has been objected to the positive form, that, as it denotes the quality in its simple state, without increase or diminution, it cannot properly be called a degree. It should, however, be considered that all adjectives imply

- 2. The comparative degree denotes that one object possesses a higher or lower degree of the quality than another with which it is compared; as, better, wiser, less wise.
- 3. The superlative degree denotes that one of several objects possesses a higher or lower degree of the quality than any of the rest; as, best, wisest, least wise.
- § 104. The comparative of adjectives of one syllable, is commonly formed by adding r or er to the positive; as, wise, wise, wiser; great, greater; and the superlative, by adding st or est; as, wise, wisest; great, greatest.

Adjectives of more than one syllable, are generally compared by prefixing more and most to the positive; as, generous, more generous, most generous.

Diminution of quality is expressed by less and least, whether the adjective is of one syllable or more than one; as, bold, less bold, least bold.

REM. 1. — Dissyllables ending in y or silent e, and those accented on the last syllable, are often compared like monosyllables, by er and est; as, happy, happier, happiest; noble, nobler, noblest; profound, profounder, profoundest.

Rem. 2. — The foregoing principles, respecting the comparison of adjectives, are those which conform to the prevailing usage of the lan-

What does the comparative degree denote? Examples. The superlative? Examples. How are adjectives of one syllable generally compared? Examples. How are adjectives of more than one syllable generally compared? Examples. How is diminution of quality expressed? Examples. What classes of dissyllables are often compared by er and est? [What is a dissyllable?] Examples of dissyllables compared by er and est.

a general comparison of qualities. Thus, when we say that a man is discreet, we obviously mean that he has more discretion than the generality of men. So also, when we say a man is tall, it is implied that he is tall compared with other men. Hence arises the difference between the height of a tall man and that of a tall tree, each being compared with others of the same kind. In this sense, therefore, the positive is strictly and properly a degree of comparison.

guage. They are, however, in some cases, disregarded by the best writers; as, "Objects of our tenderest cares."—E. Everett. "The commonest material object."—Dana. "The soberest truth."—Channing.

Rem. 3. — In all qualities capable of increase or diminution, the number of degrees from the highest to the lowest is indefinite. Whenever we wish to express any of the different shades of quality which are not denoted by the three forms of the adjective, we employ various modifying words and phrases; as, rather, somewhat, slightly, a little, so, too, very, greatly, highly, exceedingly, in a high degree.

Examples: - "A very pernicious war;" - "It is a little discolored;"

-" Too strong to bend, too proud to learn."

Rem. 4. — The termination ish is also joined to certain words, to denote a slight degree of quality; as, black, blackish; salt, saltish.

Rem. 5. — When either of the words more, most, less, least, is prefixed to an adjective, it may be considered as forming a part of the adjective. Thus, the compound terms more happy and less happy, are regarded as adjectives in the comparative degree; but when the words are considered separately, the prefixes more, most, etc., are properly adverbs.

Rem. 6. — The following adjectives are compared irregularly: —

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Good	better	best
Bad, evil, or ill	worse	worst
Far	(farther*	farthest
rar	further	furthest
Fore	former	foremost (in place) first (in time or order)
Late	later	latest (referring to time) last (in order)
Little	less	least
Much or many	more	most
Near	nearer	<pre>{ nearest (referring to place) } next (in order)</pre>
Old	∫ older	oldest
Old	{ elder	eldest

REM. 7. — Some adjectives in the superlative degree are formed by adding most to the comparative, or to the word from which the comparative itself is made; as, hind, hinder, hindermost or hindmost; nether, nethermost; up, upper, uppermost or upmost; in, inner, innermost or inmost.

REM. 8. — Adjectives whose signification does not admit of increase or diminution, cannot be compared; as, square, first, one, all, any, wooden, daily, infinite.

What adjectives are compared irregularly? Compare them. What adjectives cannot be compared? Examples.

<sup>\* &</sup>quot;Further is the genuine Saxon word; farther takes precedence in modern use." — Smart's Dict.

Obs. — The word perfect\* and some otherst which are not strictly

comparable, are often qualified by more and most, and by less and least.

Examples:—"A more perfect civilization."—B. B. Edwards. "The most perfect society."—E. Everett. "Less perfect imitations."— Macaulay. "The more perfect oneness." - Dana.

§ 105. Adjectives are sometimes used to perform the office of nouns, as "Providence rewards the good;" and mouns to perform the office of adjectives, as "An iron fence;"—" Meadow ground."

#### EXERCISES.

§ 106. Good, this, seven, round, British, the, those, straight, fortieth, white, all, rich, any, Chinese, two, an, virtuous, eighteen, destructive, a, some, Alpine, first, many, boiling water, heated iron.

Which of the foregoing adjectives are descriptive and which definitive? Which of them are proper? Which numeral? Which pronominal? Which participial? Which are articles?

Compare the following adjectives: -

Strong, robust, sincere, low, swift, grateful, little, bad, studious.

"This site commands an extensive view of the surrounding country." - "The rapid current of a large river, the foaming cataract, the vivid flash of forked lightning, and the majestic rolling of the mighty ocean, are objects which excite in our minds emotions of grandeur and sublimity." — "Every leaf and every twig teems with life." - " Homer was the greater genius; Virgil, the better artist."-" Rhode Island is the smallest state in the Union." - "Numbers are expressed by ten Arabic characters."

Point out the adjectives in the foregoing sentences. Which of them are descriptive? Which definitive? Which are proper? Which numeral? Which pronominal? Which participial? Which are the articles? Which of the descriptive adjectives are in the positive degree? 'Compare them. Which are in the comparative? Compare them. Which in the superlative? Compare them.

<sup>† &</sup>quot;Usage has given to 'more and most perfect' a sanction which we dare hardly controvert." - Crombie.

<sup>‡ &</sup>quot;More complete, most complete, less complete, are common expressions." -Webster.

Write sentences containing examples of descriptive and definitive adjectives; and others containing examples of adjectives in each of the three degrees of comparison.

### THE PRONOUN.

§ 107. A *Pronoun\** is a word used to supply the place of a noun; as, "When Cæsar had conquered Gaul, he turned his army against his country."

REM. — The word which is represented by a pronoun usually precedes it, and is hence called its antecedent.

§ 108. Pronouns may be divided into three general classes; — personal, relative, and interrogative.

### PERSONAL PRONOUN.

§ 109. A personal pronoun is a pronoun that expresses person and number of itself.

The personal pronouns are I, thou or you, he, she, and it. I is of the first person; thou or you is of the second; and he, she, and it, are of the third.

Pronouns, like nouns, have gender, person, number, and case.

Rem. 1.—Personal pronouns are varied to distinguish the numbers and cases; but variety of form to distinguish the genders, is confined to the third person singular.

What is a pronoun? Examples. What is the antecedent of a pronoun? Into what general classes are pronouns divided? What is a personal pronoun? Enumerate the personal pronouns, and give the person of each. What modifications have pronouns? For what are personal pronouns varied?

<sup>\*</sup>The term pronoun is derived from two Latin words, pro and nomen, which signify for a name.

Rem. 2. — As persons speaking or spoken to, are supposed to be present, and their sex sufficiently obvious, variety of form in the corresponding pronouns, to express distinction of gender, is unnecessary. But persons or things spoken of, being considered as absent, it is proper to make a distinction of gender; and the third person of the pronoun is accordingly distinguished by using he for the masculine, she for the feminine, and it for the neuter.

### DECLENSION OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

### § 110. FIRST PERSON.

Sir	igular.	Plural.
Nom.	I	we*
Poss.	My or mine	our
Obj.	Me	us
Ind.	Me or I	we

Rem. 1. — Mine and thine were formerly employed instead of my and thy, before words beginning with the sound of a vowel. This usage is now confined chiefly to poetry and the solemn style of prose.

Examples: — "I kept myself from mine iniquity." — Ps. 18: 23. "Mine hour is not yet come." — John 2: 4.

"God stay thee in thine agony, my boy." - Willis.

Rem. 2. — The first person singular is seldom used in the independent case, except by exclamation. The first person plural, when used independently, properly takes the same form as the nominative, though the objective form is sometimes employed.

Examples: — "O wretched we!" — Dryden. - "O rare we!" — Cowper. "Ah! luckless I." — Francis.

"Ah me! neglected on the lonesome plain." - Beattie.

"Me miserable! which way shall I fly Infinite wrath and infinite despair?" — Milton.

### § 111. SECOND PERSON. — Solemn Style.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	Thou	ye or you
Poss.	Thy or thine	your
Obj.	Thee	you
Ind.	Thou	ye or you

#### Decline I. Decline thou.

<sup>\*</sup>The plural of pronouns in the first and second persons, does not bear the same relation to the singular as the plural of nouns. Thus the plural men is equivalent to the repetition of the singular man. But the plural we is equivalent to the singular I, together with others in the second or third person, and not to the singular I repeated. So, also, the plural of thou is often equivalent to thou, together with others in the third person.

REM. 1.—The pronoun *thou* is employed in addressing the Deity, in the Sacred Scriptures, and in poetry. It also occurs in other solemn or impassioned prosaic writings, and the Society of Friends still use it in common discourse.

REM. 2. — The poets sometimes employ ye instead of you for the objective plural; as,

"Brother, sweet sister, peace around ye dwell." - Hemans.

"I told ye then he should prevail and speed On his bad errand."—*Milton*.

This usage is generally regarded as inelegant.

### §112. SECOND PERSON. - Common Style.

Singular.		Plura
Nom.	You	you
Poss.	Your	your
Obj.	You	you
Ind.	You	you

REM. — The word you\* was originally plural in signification;

When is thou employed? Examples. Decline you. What was the original use of you?

\*No usage of our language is more fully established than that which recognizes you as the representative of nouns in the singular number.

"In the using of you to one, as well as to more than one (which is the Language of the Nation, not only spoke by the private persons, but extant in the both private and publick Writings of it), we do seem to imitate the French, who, as they have one word, viz. tu for thou, and one, viz. vos for ye; so they have one which they use both to one, and to more than one, indifferently; namely, vous, you."—Walker's Treatise of English Particles; London, 1653.

Brightland one of the activity of the second of the cardinate of the cardina

Brightland, one of the earliest of our English grammarians, who wrote in 1710, classes you with the singular pronouns *I, thou*, and he. Greenwood, in his celebrated grammar, which appeared the following year, says, "Thou or you is of the second person singular." This disposition of you was followed by the author of the British Grammar, and by Farro, Fisher, Buchanan, Dilworth, Smetham, Menye, and several other grammatical writers of the last century.

Mr. Murray's grammar first appeared in 1795. Following the practice of the Society of Friends,—the community in which he was educated,—he restricted you to the plural number; and such was the influence of his example, that this word was, for a time, very generally excluded from the list of singular pronouns.

There has however always existed a respectable class of authors who

There has, however, always existed a respectable class of authors, who have treated the pronoun *you* as singular, when applied to an individual; and, during the last twenty-five or thirty years, the number of this class has very rapidly increased.

"It is altogether absurd to consider you as exclusively a plural pronoun

but it is now universally employed in popular discourse, to represent either a singular or a plural noun.

### \$ 113. THIRD PERSON.

		U					
	Mascu	dine.	Fema	inine.	Nei	ıter.	
	Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.	
Nom.	He	they	She	they	It	they	
Poss.	His	their	Her	they their	Its	their	
Obj.	Him	them	Her	them	It	them	
Ind.	He	they	She	they	It	they	

REM. 1. - In the third person, masculine and feminine, the independent case has usually the nominative form, though the use of the objective is not wholly destitute of authority.\*

Examples: — "Ah luckless he!" — Shenstone.

"God from the mount of Sinai, whose gray top Shall tremble, he descending, will himself Ordain them laws."-Milton.

" Miserable they, Who, here entangled in the gathering ice, Take their last look of the descending sun."-Thomson.

### Decline he, she, and it.

in the modern English language. It may be a matter of history, that it was originally used as a plural only; and it may be a matter of theory, that it was first applied to individuals on a principle of flattery; but the fact is, that it is now our second person singular. When applied to an individual, it never excites any idea either of plurality or of adulation; but excites, precisely and exactly, the idea that was excited by the use of thou, in an

"If a word, once exclusively plural, becomes, by universal use, the sign of individuality, it must take its place in the singular number. That this is the fact with you, is proved by national usage."—Webster.

A list of additional authorities is subjoined for the gratification of the curious student. The writers here enumerated treat the pronoun you as sinrious student. The writers here enumerated treat the pronoun you as singular, when applied to an individual:—Angell, C. Adams, A. Alden, Booth, Bell, Brace, Barnard, Barrie, John Barrett, D. Blair, Cochran, Cutler, Cobb, Davis, Elmore, Emmons, Felton, Fletcher, Fuller, Fowle, Gilbert, Goodenow, Goldsbury, R. W. Green, Gurney, Joel, Judson, Lewis, Morley, McCulloch, Pullen, J. M. Putnam, Picket, Pinnock, Ross, W. E. Russell, Caleb Reed, Snyder, Swett, R. C. Smith, P. Smith, Stearns, Sanborn, Todd, Ticken, Wilcox, Wilbur, G. Wilson, J. P. Wilson, Weld, McCready, Cooper, Powers, Whiting, Beall, J. Ward.

\* "Of the two forms, 'him excepted' and 'he excepted,' the former (contrary to the sentiment of the majority of grammarians) is the correct one." -Latham.

> "This inaccessible high strength, the seat Of deity supreme, us dispossessed, He trusted to have seized."-Milton.

REM. 2.—His\* was formerly employed as the possessive of both he and it.

Examples: - " Put up again thy sword into his place." - Matt. 26: 52. "Learning hath his infancy, when it is but beginning, and almost childish."-Bacon.

REM. 3. - My, thy, his, her, its, our, your, and their, are sometimes, though improperly, termed pronominal adjectives.

§ 114. Mine, thine, his, hers, ours, yours, and theirs, are possessive pronouns, used in construction either as nominatives or objectives; as, "Your pleasures are past, mine are to come." Here the word mine, which is used as a substitute for my pleasures, is the subject of the verb are.

REM. The words hers, its, ours, yours, theirs, are sometimes improperly written her's, it's, our's, your's, their's. This error should be carefully

§ 115. The words myself, thyself, yourself, himself, herself, and itself, with their plurals, ourselves, yourselves, and themselves, are called compound personal pronouns. They are frequently joined to nouns and simple pronouns, to express emphasis; as, "You yourselves are the contrivers of your own ruin;" - "The mountains themselves decay with years." They are also used when the subject and the object of the verb both represent the same person or thing. "I blame myself;"-" He blames me." I and myself here denote the same person, and we use the compound pronoun.

What is said of the possessive pronouns, mine, thine, etc.? Illustrate their use. What are the compound personal pronouns? When are they employed? Examples.

used. The word mine is here evidency employed at the words, my and book.

"That mine, thine, yours, his, hers, theirs, do not constitute a possessive case, is demonstrable; for they are constantly used as the nominatives to verbs and as objectives after verbs and prepositions."—Webster.

See also Dr. Wilson, Smart, Jenkins, Goodenow, Jaudon, Felch, Hazen,

Todd, E. Smith, Cooper, Cutler, and Davis.

<sup>\* &</sup>quot;The possessive its does not appear before the seventeenth century."—Booth. "Its is not found in the Bible, except by misprint."—G. Brown.

<sup>†</sup> Mine, thine, etc., are often pursed as pronouns in the possessive case, and governed by nouns understood. Thus, in the sentence, "This book is mine," the word mine is said to possess book. That the word book is not here understood, is obvious from the fact, that, when it is supplied, the phrase becomes, \*\*Dot "mine book," but "my book," the pronoun being changed from mine to my; so that we are made, by this practice, to parse mine as possessing a word understood, before which it cannot properly be used. The word mine; here evidently employed as a substitute for the used. The word mine is here evidently employed as a substitute for the

REM. — The word self, when used alone, is a noun; as, "The love of self is predominant."

### RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 116. A relative pronoun is a pronoun that relates directly to some preceding word or phrase, and serves to connect sentences.

REM. 1. - When the antecedent of a relative is in the independent case, the pronoun connects a simple sentence with the independent nonn or pronoun and its adjuncts; as,
"Ye undying and desperate sons of the brave,

Who so often your valor have shown."

REM. 2. — The connective office of a relative pronoun should always be pointed out in parsing. Thus, in the compound sentence, "Bless them that curse you," the pronoun that is the subject of the verb curse in one of the members; and it relates to them, which is the object of the verb bless in the other member. A relative pronoun always relates to some word out of the clause in which it stands, and thus joins the two clauses together.

§ 117. The words used as relative pronouns, are who, which, that, and what.

Who is applied to persons, and which to irrational animals and things without life; as, "The man who is accustomed to reflect, finds instruction in every thing;" -"I have found the book which I had lost."

That is used for who or which, and may be applied either to persons or things; as, "He that gathereth in summer, is a wise son; "-" A city that is set on a hill, cannot be hid."

What is a relative pronoun? Illustrate the connective office of relatives. Enumerate the relative pronouns. What are the respective applications of who, which, and that? Examples of each.

Who, which, and that, are thus declined:—

Sing	and Plur.	Sing. and Plur.	Sing. and Plur
Nom.	Who	Which	That
Poss.	Whose	Whose*	Whose
Obj.	Whom	Which	That
Ind.	Who	Which	

§ 118. The word what is often used as a compound relative pronoun, equivalent in signification to that which† or those which; as, "One man admires what [that which] displeases another." What here sustains the relation of both the nominative and the objective case. As a nominative, it is the subject of the verb displeases; as an objective, it is the object of admires.

REM. 1.— What sometimes performs, at once, the office of an adjective and a pronoun; as, "What time remained, was well employed." As an adjective, what here qualifies time; as a pronoun, it is the subject of the verb remained.

Rem. 2. — Whoever, whichever, whatever, and whosoever, whichsoever, whatsoever, are also used as compound pronouns, and parsed in

Decline the relatives who, which, and that. How is what often used? Examples. What two parts of speech does what sometimes represent? Examples. What other words are employed as compound relatives? Examples.

<sup>\*</sup> The possessive of *which* is, in many grammars, marked as wanting; but the use of *whose*, as the possessive of both *who* and *which*, may now be regarded as fully established by the authority of our most eminent writers and speakers.

Examples:—"Cedar groves, whose gigantic branches threw a refreshing coolness over the verdure."—Prescott. "At such times, I am apt to seek the Hall of Justice, whose deep, shadowy arcades extend across the upper end of the Court."—Lrving. "Statues, whose miserable and mutilated fragments are the models of modern art."—E. Everett. "Impressions, whose power can scarcely be calculated."—E. Cheever. "He wanted learning, whose place no splendor of genius can supply to the lawyer."—Wirt. "Dramas, whose termination is the total ruin of their heroes."—J. G. Lockhart. "A triangle, or three-sided figure, one of whose sides is perpendicular to another."—Brougham. Other examples from the best authorities might be multiplied at pleasure.

<sup>&</sup>quot;I have given whose as the genitive of which; not only because this usage is sanctioned by classical authority, but likewise because the other form, of which, is frequently awkward and inelegant."—Dr. Crombie.

<sup>†</sup> Many grammarians erroneously substitute the two equivalent words, that which, and parse them instead of the original word what. This is parsing their own language, and not the author's. The word what, when compound, should be parsed as performing the office of two nominatives, or two objectives, or of both a nominative and an objective.

the same manner as the compound what. Thus, in the sentence, "Whoever disregards the laws of his being, must suffer the penalty," whoever is the subject of the two verbs, disregards and must suffer.

Rem. 3. — Whoso was formerly used as a compound pronoun, in the sense of whosoever; as, "Whoso, therefore, shall swear by the altar, sweareth by it, and by all things thereon." It is now nearly obsolete.

REM. 4. — Which and what are sometimes used as adjectives; as, "For which reason;" — "What tongue can tell?"

§ 119. The distinction between personal and relative pronouns should receive special attention. Each of the *personal* pronouns is used to represent one of the three persons, and no other. Thus I is always of the first person, and he always of the third. A relative pronoun does not express person of itself, but always depends on its antecedent for person. Thus, we may say, "I who speak;" "You who speak;" "He who speaks." Who is here employed in each of the three persons.

### INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 120. An interrogative pronoun is a pronoun that is used in asking a question; as, "Who is this?" The words used as interrogative pronouns, are who, which, and what.

REM. 1.— Who, used interrogatively, is applied only to persons; which and what are applied to both persons and things.

REM. 2. — Whether, signifying which of the two, was formerly used as an interrogative; as, "Whether of them twain did the will of his father?" In this sense it is now out of use.

### EXERCISES.

 $\S$  121. Give the person, number, and case of each of the following pronouns: —

His, she, its, thee, he, they, our, I, them.

Give examples of which and what, used as adjectives. Explain and illustrate the distinction between personal and relative pronouns. What is an interrogative pronoun? Enumerate the interrogatives. To what are the interrogatives who, which, and what, respectively applied?

What personal pronoun is in the third person singular, masculine gender, and possessive case?—in the second person singular, solemn style, and objective case?—in the third person plural, nominative case?—in the first person plural, objective case?—in the first person singular, possessive case?—in the second person plural, nominative case?—in the third person singular, neuter gender, possessive case?—in the second person singular, common style, nominative case?—in the third person singular, feminine gender, nominative case?—in the first person plural, possessive case? Give the person, number, and case of him;—me;—its;—she;—them;—us;—my;—thee.

"As he was valiant, I honor him."—"The crime which has been once committed, is committed again with less reluctance."—"I charge thee, fling away ambition."—"He that trusteth in his riches, shall fall."—"Virtue is most laudable in that state which makes it most difficult."—"Who wrote the letter?"—"You wrong yourself."—"O thou that rollest above, round as the shield of my fathers!"

Point out the pronouns in the foregoing sentences. Which of them are personal? Which relative? Which interrogative? Give the person, number, gender, and case of each, with the reasons.

Model.—He (in the first sentence above) is a pronoun, because it is a word used to supply the place of a noun;—personal, because it expresses person and number of itself;—in the third person, because it denotes a person spoken of;—in the singular number, because it denotes but one;—in the masculine gender, because it denotes a male;—and in the nominative case, because it is the subject of the verb was.

Write sentences containing examples of personal, relative, and interrogative pronouns.

### THE VERB.

§ 122. A Verb\* is a word that expresses an assertion or affirmation; † as, I am; I teach; I am taught.

### What is a verb? Examples.

<sup>\*</sup> The term verb is derived from the Latin verbum, which signifies a word. This part of speech is so called because the verb is the principal word in a sentence.

<sup>†</sup> The idea of a verb is not easily expressed in a single sentence. The

83 VERRS.

A Verb may also be used to command, exhort, request, and inquire, as "Be silent," "Spare me," "Have you written the letter?" and to express an action or state in a general and abstract sense, as doing, to obey.

- § 123. Verbs are divided into two general classes; transitive and intransitive.\*
- 1. A transitive verb is a verb that governs an objective case; as, "Henry has learned his lesson."

The term transitive signifies passing over.

- 2. An intransitive verb is a verb that does not govern an objective case; as, "He is;" - "The horse runs."
- REM. There are some verbs which may be used either transitively or intransitively, the construction alone determining to which class they belong.
- § 124. Transitive verbs have two forms, called the active and the passive voice. †

What other uses have verbs? Into what general classes are verbs divided? What is a transitive verb? Examples. What is an intransitive verb? Examples. What two forms have transitive verbs?

definition here adopted is based on the most distinguishing characteristic of this part of speech; and is substantially the same as that of Priestley, Blair, Harris, Beattie, Crombie, Andrews and Stoddard, the British Grammar, Rees's Encyc., Brewster's Encyc., Grant, Sutcliffe, M'Culloch, Bullions, Fletcher, Cooper, Goldsbury, Frost, Parkhurst, Butler, Hart, and others.

\* "The proper division of verbs is into transitive and intransitive; for this distinction is practical, and has an effect in the formation of sentences, which is not true of the other distinctions."— Goodenow.

"This classification of verbs is founded on their use in the construction

of sentences." - Frazee.

the grammars of Arnold, Webster, M'Gulloch, Hart, Crane, Frost, Butler, Bullions, Connon, R. W. Green, Reed, Perley, Ussher, Fuller, Staniford, Bingham, Locke, Ticknor, Lindsay, Earl, Spear, Story, Webber, Nutting, Cobb, and others. The division of words into transitive and intransitive is also adopted in

† "Active and passive do not denote two different kinds of verb, but one kind under two different forms, denominated the active and passive voice."

"It needs no argument to prove that 'I am struck' is just as really a modification of to strike, as 'I have struck' is; and yet, under the old classification of active, passive, and neuter, the pupil was taught to consider these forms as two verbs belonging to different classes."— Hart.

- 1. The active voice represents the subject or nominative as acting upon some object.
- 2. The passive voice represents the nominative as being acted upon.

Rem. 1.—In the sentence, "Cæsar conquered Pompey," the verb conquered represents the nominative Cæsar as acting upon the object Pompey. The verb conquered is therefore in the æctive voice. But in the expression, "Pompey was conquered by Cæsar," the verb was conquered represents the nominative Pompey as being acted upon. The verb was conquered is therefore in the passive voice.

[When a verb is said to be transitive, and no mention is made of the voice, it is understood to be in the active voice. The passive voice of a transitive verb is often denominated a passive verb.]

Rem. 2.— A verb in the passive voice is composed of the perfect participle of a transitive verb, and one of the forms of the verb to be;\* as, are heard, were heard, am heard, to be heard.

Rem. 3. — Most intransitive verbs do not admit of the passive form. Thus, instead of saying, "Very great abuses are crept into this entertainment," it would be better to say, "Very great abuses have crept into this entertainment." But the verbs come and go, and perhaps a few others, may, in some cases, properly assume the passive form; as, "The time is come." — Channing. "The sharp touches of the chisel are gone from the rich tracery of the arches." — Irving. Verbs of this description are usually denominated neuter passive verbs.

§ 125. Verbs are also divided into regular and irregular.

What does the active voice represent? The passive voice? Illustrate. Of what is a verb in the passive voice composed? Examples. What verbs do not generally admit the passive form? Illustrate. What exceptions are there to this principle? Examples. Into what other classes are verbs divided?

<sup>\*</sup> Many respectable grammarians reject the passive voice of the verb altogether; parsing the participle by itself, and the verb to be as a principal verb. See Rees's Cyclopædia, and the Grammars of Nutting, Crombie, S. Oliver, Ash, Lewis, and Connon.

VERBS. 85

- 1. A regular verb is one that forms its past tense and perfect participle by adding d or ed to the present; as, present, love; past, loved; perf. part., loved; call, called, called.
- Rem. 1. Regular verbs ending in silent e, form their past tense and perfect participle, by the addition of d only; and those ending in any other letter, by the addition of ed.

Rem. 2. — The verbs hear, pay, say, and lay, which do not end in e, and which add d only for the past tense and perfect participle, are classed with irregular verbs.

2. An irregular verb is one that does not form its past tense and perfect participle by adding d or ed to the present; as, present, see; past, saw; perf. part., seen; go, went, gone.

#### EXERCISES.

§ 126. "The tree grows." — "Columbus discovered America." — "You were expected." — "Man is mortal." — "We are observed." — "He received an injury."

Point out the verbs in the foregoing sentences. Which of them are regular? Which irregular? Which are transitive? Which intransitive? Which passive?

Name three regular verbs; - three irregular.

Write sentences containing examples of transitive, intransitive, and passive verbs.

### MODE.

§ 127. Mode is a term used to denote the manner in which the verb is employed.

Verbs have five modes; \* — the indicative, the sub-

What is a regular verb? Examples. What is an irregular verb? Examples. What is mode? Enumerate the different modes.

<sup>\*</sup> The recognition of a potential mode, in so many of our popular grammars, affords a striking example of the power of custom. The expressions, "It may rain," "He may go," "I can ride," etc., are manifestly declarative; and the verbs may rain, may go, can ride, etc., are appropriately ranked in the indicative mode. "I can walk," expresses quite as distinct

junctive, the imperative, the infinitive, and the participial.\*

§ 128. The indicative mode is that which indicates or declares, or asks a question; as, He can learn; Does he learn? Can he learn?

REM. 1. — The common form of the indicative mode is that which merely expresses a declaration or an interrogation; as, "He improves;"-"Will you go?"

REM. 2. — The potential form of the indicative is that which expresses a declaration or asks a question, and also implies possibility, liberty, power, determination, obligation, necessity, etc.; as, "He can walk;"-" We must return;"-" What would they have?"

In speaking of the common form of the indicative, it will generally

What is the indicative mode? Examples. What is the common form of the indicative mode? Examples. The potential form? Examples.

a declaration as "I walk." Thus, "I can walk," declares that I have the power to walk; while "I walk," declares the act of walking.

Most authors who recognize a potential mode, still class such expressions as "If I should go," with the subjunctive. But "I should go," asserts or declares the same thing that "If I should go," expresses under a condition; and hence the difference between them is precisely the distinction between and nence the difference between them is precisely the distinction between the indicative and the subjunctive. And since the use of the conjunction if, produces no other effect than to change the sentence from a declarative to a conditional form, it is obvious that all of its potential qualities must still remain; hence the clause, "If I should go," has the same claim to be ranked with the potential, as "I should go." If, then, this form of the verb is classed with the subjunctive mode when it is used conditionally, consistency would seem to require that it should be classed with the indicative. tency would seem to require that it should be classed with the indicative,

when its use is declaratory.

Do the expressions, "He would walk," "They should learn," imply will or obligation more clearly than "I will obey," "Thou shalt not kill," "He ought to learn"?

"The mere expressions of will, possibility, liberty, obligation, etc., belong to the Indicative Mode."—Lowth.

"As to the retartial mode it may I think in all cases, he resolved into

"As to the potential mode, it may, I think, in all cases, be resolved into either the indicative or the subjunctive."—Beattie's Theory of Language. "The forms of expression, I'can go, we may ride, he must obey, are really declaratory, and properly belong to the indicative." — Webster.

The potential mode is also rejected by Jamieson, H. Ward, Martin, Coote, Cobbett, Lewis, Hazlitt, Hodgson, St. Quentin, Bell, Barrie, Buchanan, Coar, Trinder, Adam, Arnold, Higginson, Giles, Beall, Perry, Ross, Nutting, J. P. Wilson, Willard, Hallock, Dearborn, J. Flint, D. Adams, Judson, Pue, Cardell Cuttle Belgh, Franch and ather. dell, Cutler, Balch, French, and others.

\* If the participle is properly regarded as a form of the verb, it is obvious that it must be employed in some mode. In the conjugation of verbs, it is

87 VERBS.

be found convenient to employ merely the term indicative mode; and in speaking of the potential form, to designate it as the potential indicative.]

REM. 3. — Were is sometimes used for would be or should be; as, "Ah! what were man, should Heaven refuse to hear?"

Rem. 4. — Had is also occasionally employed for would have, or should have; as, "Had thought been all, sweet speech had [would have] been denied."— Young.

§ 129. The subjunctive mode is that which implies condition, supposition, or uncertainty; as, "If he had the opportunity, he would improve rapidly;"-" Take heed, lest any man deceive you."

REM. 1. — Every verb in the subjunctive implies two propositions; the one principal, and the other subordinate. The subordinate clause is usually preceded by a conjunction, subjoining it to the antecedent, or principal clause, on which it depends. Thus, in the sentence, "I will remain if you desire it," the dependent clause, "you desire it," is preceded by the conjunction if, which subjoins it to the principal clause, "I will remain."

REM. 2. — The condition of a verb in the subjunctive is sometimes expressed by transposition, without the aid of a conjunction; as, "Had he taken the counsel of friends, he would have been saved from ruin."

REM. 3. — The subjunctive mode, like the indicative, admits of the potential form; as, "He might improve, if he would make the necessary effort." See § 128.

What is the subjunctive mode? Examples. What does every subjunctive clause imply? Illustrate. What modification in form does the subjunctive admit? Examples.

uniformly introduced in connection with the other modes, and treated in every respect as a mode.

"The participle is merely a mode of the verb, and it might properly be termed the participial mode."—Sanborn.

"If modes be the manner of representing the verb, we see no good reason why participles should not be reckoned a mode."—Goodenov.

"That the participle is a mere mode of the verb, is manifest, if our definition of a verb be admitted."—Lowth.

"There are four modes; the Infinitive, Indicative, Imperative, and Sub-

junctive, to which we may add the Participles, as necessary to be considered together with the verb."—*Higginson*.

"Mr. Murray contends strenuously for the participle, as 'a mode of the verb,' and yet has not the consistency of assigning it a place among the modes, as it must have, if it be any verb at all."—*Willard*.

The participle is also ranked as a mode of the verb by Elphinston, Allen and Cornwell, Connell, De Sacy, St. Quentin, Felch, Fletcher, Gurney, Day, and others.

Day, and others.

- § 130. The *imperative* mode is that which commands, exhorts, entreats, or permits; as, "Go thou;" - "Study diligently;"-" Forgive us our trespasses;"-" Depart in peace."
- § 131. The infinitive mode is the root or first form of the verb, used to express an action or state indefinitely; as, to hear, to speak. It is generally distinguished by the sign to.

Rem. — When the particle to is employed in forming the infinitive, it is to be regarded as a part of the verb.

### Participles.

§ 132. The participle is a mode of the verb, partaking of the properties of the verb and the adjective; as, seeing, seen, having seen, having been seen.

Participles may be classed under two general divisions; - imperfect\* and perfect.

1. An imperfect participle denotes the continuance of an action or state; as, calling, seeing, being seen.

REM. - Imperfect participles relate to present, past, or future

What is the imperative mode? Examples. The infinitive? ples. How is the infinitive generally distinguished? What is the participle? Examples. Into what general classes are participles divided? What is an imperfect participle? Examples. To what time do imperfect participles relate?

lish Verb.

See also Grant, Baldwin, Lewis, M'Culloch, Churchill, Connon, Butler, and R. W. Green.

<sup>\* &</sup>quot;The distinguishing characteristic of this participle is, that it denotes an unfinished and progressive state of the being, action, or passion; it is therefore properly denominated the interfect participle."—G. Brown.

"All that is peculiar to the participles is, that the one signifies a perfect, and the other an imperfect action."—Pickbourn's Dissertation on the English Unit.

<sup>&</sup>quot;The most unexceptionable distinction which grammarians make between the participles, is, that the one points to the continuation of the action, passion, or state, denoted by the verb; and the other, to the completion of it." - Murray.

VERBS. 89

time, according as they are connected with verbs in the present, past, or future tense.

- 2. A perfect participle denotes the completion of an action or state; as, called, seen, having seen.
- § 133. Participles are also divided into two other classes, called simple and compound.
- 1. A simple participle is a participle that consists of only one word; as, doing, done.
- 2. A compound participle is a participle that is composed of two or more words; as, being seen, having seen, having been seen. Being seen is a compound imperfect participle; having seen and having been seen are compound perfect participles.
- REM. 1. Participles, like other modifications of the verb, are either transitive or intransitive. Thus, seeing and having seen are transitive; being and walking, intransitive. Transitive participles are also distinguished by voices; as, active, seeing, having seen; passive, seen, having been seen.
- Rem. 2. Participles often lose their verbal character, and become adjectives; as, "A moving spectacle;"—"A revised edition." They are then called participial adjectives.
- REM. 3. Participles are also used to perform the office of nouns; as, "They could not avoid submitting to this influence." When used in this manner, they are called participial nouns.
- § 134. Besides the regular grammatical modes expressed by the verb, it is obvious that there must be numerous other distinctions of manner, which can be indicated only by the use of various modifying words and phrases; as, "The storm beats violently;"—"The horse sleeps standing."

#### TENSE.

§ 135. Tense is the distinction of time.

Verbs have six tenses; — the present, the past,\* the

What is a perfect participle? Examples. A simple participle? Examples. A compound participle? Examples. Name a transitive participle;—intransitive. A participle in the active voice;—in the passive. What is tense? Enumerate the tenses.

<sup>\*</sup> The names of the tenses adopted in this treatise, have the sanction of Connell, Skillern, Hiley, Butler, Perley, Goodenow, Fletcher, and Farnum.

future, the present perfect, the past perfect, and the future perfect.

- 1. The present tense denotes present time; as, I write; I am writing.
- 2. The past (imperfect) tense denotes indefinite past time; as, I wrote; I was writing.
- 3. The future tense denotes indefinite future time; as, I shall write; I shall be writing.
- 4. The present perfect (perfect) tense denotes past time, and also conveys an allusion to the present; as, I have written; I have been writing.
- 5. The past perfect (pluperfect) tense denotes past time that precedes some other past time, to which it refers; as, "When he had delivered the message, he took his departure."
- 6. The future perfect (second future) tense denotes future time that precedes some other future time, to which it refers; as, "I shall have finished the letter before he arrives."

Rem. — Besides these six grammatical tenses, there are numerous other distinctions of time, which are expressed by various modifying words and phrases; as, "I will go immediately;"—"I will go soon;"—"I will go in an hour;"—"I will go to-morrow;"—"I will go in the course of the week."

What is the present tense? Examples. The past tense? Examples. What is the future tense? Examples. What is the present perfect tense? Examples. The past perfect tense? Examples. The future perfect tense? Examples.

Similar terms, corresponding with the signification of the tenses, are also employed by Webster, Frazee, Day, Swett, Felton, Brace, Simmonite, Flower, Barrie, and others.

"Several of the old names either convey no idea, or an erroneous one. The imperfect tense does not, in one case of a hundred, signify an imperfect action; the perfect tense is not the only one which represents a finished action; and if we speak of first and second future tenses, we may with equal propriety have first and second present, and first and second past tenses."—Perley.

### NUMBER AND PERSON.

§ 136. Verbs have two numbers and three persons.

The person and number of a verb are always the same as the person and number of its subject or nominative.

REM. 1. — In the simple form of the present and past indicative, the second person singular of the solemn style ends regularly in st or est, as Thou seest, Thou hearest, Thou sawest, Thou heardest; and the third person singular of the present, in s or es, as He hears, He wishes; and also in th or eth, as He saith, He loveth.

REM. 2. — In the simple form of the present indicative, the third person singular of the common or familiar style, ends in s or es; as, He sleeps, He rises.

Rem. 3. — The first person singular of the solemn style, and the first and second persons singular of the common style, have the same form as the three persons plural.

REM. 4. — In forming the compound tenses of the verb, the auxiliaries only are varied.

Rem. 5. — Be and ought, and the auxiliaries shall, will, may, can, must, are irregular in their modifications to denote person.

Rem. 6. — The verb *need* is often used in the third person singular of the indicative present, without the personal termination.

Examples: — "The truth need not be disguised." — Channing. "It need only be added." —Prescott. "It need not be said." —E. Everett. "There was one condition, which need not be mentioned." —Irving. "Nothing need be concealed." —Cooper. "Time need not be wasted." —G. B. Emerson. "No other historian of that country need be mentioned." —Hallam. "The reader need not be told." —Paley. "This is a species of inconsistency, of which no man need be ashamed." —Edinburgh Review. "It need not surprise us." —J. G. Lockhart. "It need scarcely be said." —N. A. Review. "Need a bewildered traveller wish for more?" —Wordsworth.

REM. 7.—The subjunctive of all verbs, except be, takes the same form as the indicative. Good writers were formerly much accustomed to drop the personal termination in the subjunctive present, and write, "If he have," "If he deny," etc., for "If he has," "If he denies," etc.; but this termination is now generally retained, unless an auxiliary is understood.\* Thus, "If he hear,"

How many persons and numbers have verbs? With what do the person and number of a verb correspond? What is said respecting the form of verbs in the subjunctive mode? Illustrate.

<sup>\* &</sup>quot;The use of the present tense of the subjunctive, without the personal terminations, was formerly very general. It was reserved for the classical

may properly be used for "If he shall hear" or "If he should hear," when the auxiliary shall or should is manifestly implied; but when no such ellipsis is obvious, the indicative form, "If he hears," is to be preferred. See § 146, Rem. 4.

Examples:—"If the dramatist attempts to create a being answering to one of these descriptions, he fails."—Macaulay. "If he takes the tone of invective, it leads him to be uncharitable."—Southey. "If courage intrinsically consists in the defiance of danger and pain, the life of the Indian is a continual exhibition of it."—Irving. "He must feign, if he does not feel, the spirit and inspiration of the place."—Story. "If any pupil fails to reach this point, he is said to fall below the standard."—N. A. Review. Other authorities might be multiplied at pleasure.

Rem. 8. — Infinitives and participles have neither number nor person.

### CONJUGATION.

§ 137. The *conjugation* of a verb is the regular combination and arrangement of its several modes, tenses, numbers, and persons.

### PRINCIPAL PARTS.

§ 138. The three principal parts of a verb are the present tense, the past tense, and the perfect participle. These are called the principal or radical parts, because all the other parts are formed from them.

### AUXILIARIES.

§ 139. An auxiliary verb is one that is used to aid in the conjugation of other verbs.

What properties are wanting in infinitives and participles? What is the conjugation of a verb? What are the principal parts of a verb? Why so called? What is an auxiliary verb?

writers of the eighteenth century to lay aside the pedantic forms, if he go, if it proceed, though he come, etc., and restore the native idiom of the language."—Webster.

VERBS. 93

REM. — The auxiliaries are do, be, have, shall, will, may, can, with their variations, and must, which has no variation. Do, be, have, and will, are also used as principal verbs. Thus, in the sentence, "I have heard the news," have is used as an auxiliary to the principal verb heard; but in the sentence, "I have no time to devote to trifles," have is employed as a principal verb.

### Shall and Will.

§ 140. In affirmative sentences, shall, in the first person, simply foretells; as, "I shall write." In the second and third persons, shall is used potentially, denoting a promise, command, or determination; as, "You shall be rewarded;"—"Thou shalt not kill;"—"He shall be punished." Will, in the first person, is used potentially, denoting a promise or determination; as, "I will go, at all hazards." In the second and third persons, will simply foretells; as, "You will soon be there;"—"He will expect you."

§ 141. In interrogative sentences, shall, in the first person, may either be used potentially to inquire the will of the party addressed, as, "Shall I bring you another book?" or it may simply ask whether a certain event will occur, as, "Shall I arrive in time for the cars?" When shall is used interrogatively in the second person, it simply denotes futurity; as, "Shall you be in New York next week?" Shall, employed interrogatively in the third person, has a potential signification, and is used to inquire the will of the party addressed; as, "Shall John order the carriage?" Will, used interrogatively in the second person, is potential in its signification; as, "Will you go?" Will may be used interrogatively in the third person, to denote mere futurity, as, "Will the boat leave to-day?" or it may have a potential signification, inquiring the will of the party spoken of, as, "Will he hazard his life for the safety of his friend?"

§ 142. In the subjunctive mode, shall, in all the persons, denotes

Enumerate the auxiliaries. Which of these are also used as principal verbs?

mere futurity; as, "If thy brother shall trespass against thee, go and tell him his fault." Will, on the contrary, is potential in its signification, having respect to the will of the agent or subject; as, "If he will strive to improve, he shall be duly rewarded."

§ 143. The following conjugation of shall and will is inserted to give the pupil a more distinct idea of the proper use of these auxiliaries:—

### Shall and Will.

### AFFIRMATIVE.

### Simple Indicative.

Sin	gular.			Plural.
1st Person,	I shall		1.	We shall
2d Person,	You will Thou wilt	٠	2.	You will Ye will
3d Person,	He will		3.	They will

#### Potential Indicative:

Singular.	Plural.
1. I will	1. We will
2. You shall Thou shalt	2. You shall Ye shall
3. He shall	3. They shall

#### INTERROGATIVE.

### Simple Indicative.

	Singular.	Plural.
1.	Shall I?	1. Shall we?
2.	Shall you? Shalt thou?	2. Shall you? Shall ye?
3.		3. Will they?

Which of the verbs in the following sentences are simple indicatives, and which have a potential signification?—"I will go;"—"I shall go;"—"He shall obey;"—"Will you go?"—"Will they go?"—"You should improve your time." [Other similar questions respecting these auxiliaries, should be added by the teacher.]

### Potential Indicative.

Singular.	Plural.
1. Shall I?	1. Shall we?
2. { Will you? Wilt thou?	2. \{\text{Will you?}\}\text{Will ye?}
2. Wilt thou?	2. Will ye?
3. Shall or will he?	3. Shall or will they?

### SUBJUNCTIVE.

### Simple Subjunctive.

Singular.	Plural.
1. If I shall	1. If we shall
2. { If you shall If thou shalt	2. { If you shall If ye shall
3. If he shall	3. If they shall

### Potential Subjunctive.

Singular.	Plural.
1. If I will	1. If we will
2. { If you will If thou wilt	2. { If you will If ye will
3. If he will	3. If they will

## Should and Would.

### AFFIRMATIVE.

### Simple Indicative.

Singular.	Plural.
1. I should	1. We should
2. You would Thou wouldst	2. You would Ye would
Thou wouldst	" Ye would
3. He would	3. They would

### Potential Indicative.

Singular.	Plural.
1. I should or would	1. We should or would
<ol> <li>You should or would</li> <li>Thou shouldst or wouldst</li> <li>He should or would</li> </ol>	<ol> <li>You should or would</li> <li>Ye should or would</li> <li>They should or would</li> </ol>

### INTERROGATIVE.

### Simple Indicative.

Singular.	- Plural.
1. Should I?	1. Should we?
2. Should you? Shouldst thou?	2. Should you? Should ye?
3. Would he?	3. Would they?

### Potential Indicative.

Singular.	Plural.
1. Should or would I?	1. Should or would we?
2. Should or would you? Shouldst or wouldst thou?	2. Should or would you? Should or would ye?
3. Should or would he?	3. Should or would they?

#### SUBJUNCTIVE.

### Simple Subjunctive.

Singular.	Plural.
1. If I should	1. If we should
2. { If you should If thou shouldst	2. If you should If ye should
3. If he should	3. If they should

### Potential Subjunctive.

Singular.		Plural.
1. If I would		1. If we would
2. { If you would If thou wouldst	,	2. { If you would If ye would
3. If he would		3. If they would

REM. — Will, used as a principal verb, is conjugated regularly.

### § 144. Correct Examples.

"Yes, my son, I will point out the way, and my soul shall guide yours in the ascent; for we will take our flight together." — Goldsmith. "The life of a solitary man will certainly be miserable, but not certainly devout." — Johnson. "The man who feels himself ignorant, should at least be modest." — Ibid. "He that would be superior to external influences, must first become superior to his own passions." — Ibid.

### § 145. Incorrect Examples.

VERRS.

"What we conceive clearly, and feel strongly, we will naturally express with clearness and strength."—Blair. "A limb shall swing upon its hinge, or play in its socket, many hundred times in an hour, for sixty years together, without diminution of its agility.—Paley. "We have much to say on the subject of this life, and will often find ourselves obliged to dissent from the opinions of the biographer."—Macaulay.

# § 146. CONJUGATION OF THE IRREGULAR VERB TO~BE.

#### PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Present, Am. Past, Was. Perf. Participle, Been.

### INDICATIVE MODE. - COMMON FORM.

#### PRESENT TENSE.

Singular.	Plural.
1st Person, I am	1. We are
2d Person, { You are Thou art	2. You are Ye are
3d Person, He is	3. They are

REM. 1.—In the Sacred Scriptures, and in the works of our early writers, be is sometimes used for are; as, "We be true men."

#### PAST TENSE.

Singular.	Phural.
1. I was	1. We were
2. You were Thou wast	2. You were Ye were
3. He was	3. They were

Correct the erroneous examples relating to the use of shall and will, and show why they are erroneous. What are the principal parts of the verb to be? Conjugate this verb in the indicative mode, common form, and present tense; — past tense.

#### FUTURE TENSE.

Singular.	Plural.
1. I shall be	1. We shall be
2. You will be Thou wilt be	2. You will be Ye will be
	Ye will be
3. He will be	3. They will be

#### PRESENT PERFECT TENSE.

Singular.	Plural.
1. I have been	1. We have been
2. You have been Thou hast been	2. You have been Ye have been
3. He has been	3. They have been

#### PAST PERFECT TENSE.

Singular.	Plural.
1. I had been	1. We had been
<ul><li>2. { You had been</li><li>3. He had been</li></ul>	2. You had been Ye had been They had been

#### FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

Singular.	Plural.
1. I shall have been	1. We shall have been
2. You will have been Thou wilt have been 3. He will have been	<ol> <li>You will have been</li> <li>Ye will have been</li> <li>They will have been</li> </ol>

### INDICATIVE MODE. — POTENTIAL FORM.

### PRESENT OF FUTURE TENSE.

	Singular.		Fiurai.
1	. I may, can, or must be	1.	We may, can, or must be
2	You may, can, or must be Thou mayest, canst, or must be	2.	You may, can, or must be Ye may, can, or must be
3	. He may, can, or must be	3.	They may, can, or must be

Conjugate the verb to be, in the indicative mode, common form, future tense; — present perfect tense; — past perfect tense; — future perfect tense.

#### PRESENT, PAST, or FUTURE TENSE.

### Singular.

- I might, could, would, or should be
- You might, could, would, or should be
- Thou mightest, couldst, wouldst, or shouldst be
- He might, could, would, or should be

### Plural.

- We might, could, would, or should be
- You might, could, would, or should be
- Ye might, could, would, or should be They might, could, would, or should be

#### PRESENT PERFECT or FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

### Singular.

- I may, can, or must have been
- You may, can, or must have been Thou mayest, canst, or must have been
- He may, can, or must have been

### Plural.

- We may, can, or must have been
- You may, can, or must have been Ye may, can, or must have been
- They may, can, or must have been 3.

#### PRESENT PERFECT or PAST PERFECT TENSE.

### Singular.

- I might, could, would, or should have been
- You might, could, would, or should have been
- Thou mightest, couldst, wouldst, or shouldst have been
- He might, could, would, or should have been

### Plural.

- We might, could, would, or should have been
- You might, could, would, or should have been
- Ye might, could, would, or should have been 3. They might, could, would, or should have been
- REM. 2. The potential use of the auxiliaries shall and will, constitutes another form of the potential indicative. See § 143.
- REM. 3. In determining the tense of a verb used potentially, the pupil should generally be governed by the sense of the passage which contains it, without any regard to the form of the verb.

### SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

PRESENT	TENSE.	 Common	Stule

PRESENT	TENSE. — Common Style.
Singular.	Plural.
1. If I am	1. If we are
2. If you are If thou art	2. { If you are If ye are 3. If they are
3. If he is	3. If they are

### PRESENT TENSE. - Ancient Style.

707
Plural.
1. If we be
o If you be
2. If ye be
2. { If you be If ye be 3. If they be

#### PAST TENSE.

Singular.	Plural.
1. If I was	1. If we were
2. { If you were If thou wast	2. If you were If ye were
3. If he was	3. If they were

#### FUTURE TENSE.

Singular.	, Plural.
1. If I shall be	1. If we shall be
2. If you shall be If thou shalt be	2. { If you shall be If ye shall be
3. If he shall be	3. If they shall be

#### PRESENT PERFECT TENSE.

Singular.	Plural.
1. If I have been	1. If we have been
2. If you have been If thou hast been	2. { If you have been If ye have been
3. If he has been	3. If they have been

PAST PERFECT	TENSE.
Singular.	Plural.
1. If I had been	1. If we had been
2. If you had been If thou hadst been	2. { If you had been } If ye had been 3. If they had been
3. If he had been	3. If they had been

Conjugate the verb to be, in the subjunctive mode, present tense, and common style; - present tense, ancient style; - past tense; - future tense; - present perfect tense; - past perfect tense.

#### FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

Dingular.	L turut.
1. If I shall have been	1. If we shall have been
2. If you shall have been If thou shalt have been	2. { If you shall have been If ye shall have been
3. If he shall have been	3. If they shall have been

#### HYPOTHETICAL FORM.\*

Singular.	Plural.
1. If I were	1. If we were
2. { If you were If thou wert	2. If you were If ye were
3. If he were	3. If they were

Rem. 4.— This form of the verb be is commonly used, in the subjunctive mode, to express a supposition or hypothesis. When employed in a negative sentence, it implies an affirmation; as, "If it were not so, I would have told you." When used in an affirmative sentence, it implies a negation; as, "If it were possible, they would deceive the very elect." The time denoted by this use of the verb, is sometimes present, and sometimes indefinite. See § 136, Rem. 7.

Rem. 5. — The past subjunctive of other verbs is often employed in a similar manner; as, "I would walk out, if it *did* not *rain*;" — "If I *had* the power, I would assist you cheerfully."

REM. 6. — The potential form of the subjunctive mode, is the same in most of the tenses, as the potential form of the indicative. The only difference between them is in the use of the auxiliaries, shall and will. See the conjugation of shall and will, § 143.

### INFINITIVE MODE.

Present, To be Present perfect, To have been

Conjugate the verb to be in the subjunctive mode, future perfect tense. What is the use of the hypothetical form of the verb? What peculiarity respecting the affirmative and negative use of the hypothetical form of the verb? Examples. What time is denoted by it? With what does the potential form of the subjunctive correspond? What is the infinitive present of the verb to be?—present perfect?

<sup>\*</sup> See Hiley, Webster, Frazee, Butler, Waldo, D'Orsey, Connon, and Crane.

#### IMPERATIVE MODE.

#### PRESENT TENSE.

Singular, Be, or { Be you Be thou Plural, Be, or { Be you Be ye

REM. 7. — Though imperatives are mostly confined to the second per-

son, they are sometimes employed in the first and third persons.\*

Examples:—"Do we all holy rites."—Shak. "Come, go we then together."—Ibid. "Proceed we to mark more particularly."—

Bp. Wilson. "Be not the muse ashamed."—Thomson. "This be thy just circumference, O world." - Milton. "Thy kingdom come." - Matt. 6: 10.

"My soul, turn from them; turn we to survey Where rougher climes a nobler race display." — Goldsmith.

#### PARTICIPLES.

Imperfect, Being

Perfect, { Been Having been

§ 147. Synopsis of the verb To Be.

#### INDICATIVE. - COMMON FORM.

Present perfect, I have been Present, I am Past perfect, I had been Past, I was Future, I shall be Future perfect, I shall have been

#### POTENTIAL INDICATIVE.

I may, can, or must be Present, or Future, Pres., Past, or Future, I might, could, would, or should be I will be Future, Pres. perf., or Fut. perf., I may, can, or must have been Pres. perf., or Past perf., I might, could, would, or should have been

#### SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present tense, common style, If I am Present tense, ancient style, If I be If I was Past tense. If I shall be Future tense,

Give the imperative; — the participles. Repeat the synopsis of the verb to be, in the common form of the indicative; — in the potential indicative; - in the subjunctive.

<sup>\*&</sup>quot;In imitation of other languages which have two or three persons in the imperative mode, we occasionally meet with verbs used in a similar manner in the first, but more frequently in the third person." — Sanborn. See also Kirkham, Frazee, Perley, R. W. Green, Gurney, Crane, Grant, S. Oliver, and Coote.

Present perfect,
Past perfect,
Future perfect,
Hypothetical form,

If I have been
If I had been
If I shall have been
If I were

#### INFINITIVE.

Present, To be

Present perfect, To have been

#### IMPERATIVE.

Present, Be, or Be you or thou

#### PARTICIPLES.

Imperfect, Being

Perfect, Been

# § 148. CONJUGATION OF THE REGULAR VERB TO LOVE, IN THE ACTIVE VOICE.

### PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Present, Love.

Past, Loved.

Perf. part., Loved.

## INDICATIVE MODE.

#### PRESENT TENSE.

	Singular.
1.	I love
2.	You love
4.	Thou lovest
3.	He loves

	Plural.
1.	We love
2.	You love Ye love
3.	They love

#### PAST TENSE.

Singular.	Plural.
1. I loved	1. We loved
2. You loved Thou lovedst	2. You loved Ye loved
3. He loved	3. They loved

Repeat the synopsis of the verb to be in the infinitive. Give the imperative; the participles. What are the principal parts of the verb to love? Conjugate this verb in the indicative mode, present tense;—past tense.

### FUTURE TENSE.

Singular.	Plural.
1. I shall love	1. We shall love
2. You will love Thou wilt love	2. You will love Ye will love
3. He will love	3. They will love

#### PRESENT PERFECT TENSE.

Singular.	Plural.
1. I have loved	1. We have loved
2. You have loved Thou hast loved	2. You have loved Ye have loved
3. He has loved	3. They have loved

#### PAST PERFECT TENSE.

Singular.	Plural.
1. I had loved	1. We had loved
2. You had loved Thou hadst loved	2. You had loved Ye had loved
3. He had loved	3. They had loved

#### FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

Singular.	Plural.	
1. I shall have loved	1. We shall have loved	
2. You will have loved Thou wilt have loved	2. You will have loved Ye will have loved	
3. He will have loved	3. They will have loved	

REM. — In the potential indicative of this and other verbs, the auxiliaries are the same as those already exhibited in the potential indicative of the verb to be. The subjunctive of all verbs, except to be, has the same form as the indicative. See § 136, Rem. 7.

### INFINITIVE MODE.

-Present, To love Present perfect, To have loved

### IMPERATIVE MODE.

### PRESENT TENSE.

Singular, Love, or  $\left\{ egin{array}{ll} {
m Love \ you} & {
m Plural, \ Love, \ or} \left\{ egin{array}{ll} {
m Love \ you} & {
m Love \ ye} \end{array} \right.$ 

### PARTICIPLES.

Imperfect, Loving	Perfect,	Having	loved
Imperject, Loving	r erject,	maving	ioveu

Conjugate the verb to love in the indicative mode, future tense;—present perfect;—past perfect;—future perfect. What is said respecting the form of the potential indicative?—of the subjunctive? Give the infinitive present;—present perfect;—the imperative;—the participles.

# § 149. Synopsis of To Love.

#### INDICATIVE.

Present, I love Past, I loved Future, I shall love Present perfect, I have loved Past perfect, I had loved Future perfect, I shall have loved

#### INFINITIVE.

Present, To love

Present perfect, To have loved

#### IMPERATIVE.

Present, Love, or love thou or you

#### PARTICIPLES.

Imperfect, Loving

Perfect, Having loved

# § 150. CONJUGATION OF TO LOVE, IN THE PASSIVE VOICE.

### INDICATIVE MODE.

#### PRESENT TENSE.

Singular. I am loved You are loved Thou art loved 3. He is loved

Plural. We are loved You are loved Ye are loved They are loved

#### PAST TENSE.

Singular. I was loved 1. You were loved Thou wast loved He was loved

Plural. We were loved You were loved Ye were loved They were loved

#### FUTURE TENSE.

Singular. I shall be loved We shall be loved You will be loved Thou wilt be loved He will be loved

You will be loved Ye will be loved They will be loved

Plural.

Give the synopsis of the verb to love. Conjugate the passive voice of the verb to love, in the indicative mode, present tense; - past tense; future tense.

#### PRESENT PERFECT TENSE.

Singular.	Plural.
1. I have been loved	1. We have been loved
2. You have been loved Thou hast been loved	2. You have been loved Ye have been loved
3 He has been loved	3 They have been loved

#### PAST PERFECT TENSE.

Singular.	Plural.
1. I had been loved	1. We had been loved
2. You had been loved Thou hadst been loved	2. You had been loved Ye had been loved
3. He had been loved	3. They had been loved

#### FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

Bingular.		Piurai.	
	I shall have been loved		We shall have been loved
2. 3.	You will have been loved Thou wilt have been loved He will have been loved	2. 3.	You will have been loved Ye will have been loved They will have been loved

### INFINITIVE MODE.

Present, To be loved Present perfect, To have been loved

### IMPERATIVE MODE.

### PRESENT TENSE.

Singular,	Be love	$d$ , or $\cdot$	Be you loved Be thou loved
Plural,	Be love	d, or	Be you loved Be ye loved

### PARTICIPLES.

Imperfect, Being loved Perfect,  $\begin{cases} Loved \\ Having been loved \end{cases}$ 

# § 151. Synopsis of To be Loved.

#### INDICATIVE.

Present,	I am loved	Pres. perfect, I have been loved
	I was loved	Past perfect, I had been loved
Future,	I shall be loved	Fut. perfect, I shall have been loved

Conjugate this verb in the indicative mode, present perfect; — past perfect; — future perfect tense. Give the infinitive present; — present perfect; — the imperative; — the participles. Give the synopsis of to be loved.

#### INFINITIVE.

Present, To be loved

Present perfect, To have been loved

#### IMPERATIVE.

Present, Be loved, or Be you or thou loved

#### PARTICIPLES.

Imperfect, Being loved

Singular.

Perfect, Loved, Having been loved

Plural.

# § 152. CONJUGATION OF THE IRREGULAR VERB TO SEE.

#### PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Present, See. Past, Saw. Perfect Participle, Seen.

### INDICATIVE MODE.

#### PRESENT TENSE.

1. I see		1.	vv e see
2. { You see Thou seest He sees		2.	You see Ye see They see
3. He sees		3.	They see
	PAST TENSE.		
Singular.			Plural.
1. I saw		1.	We saw
2. { You saw Thou sawest 3. He saw		9	You saw Ye saw They saw
Thou sawest		4.	Ye saw
3. He saw		3.	They saw
	FITTIRE TENSE	3.	

#### FUTURE TENSE.

Singular.	Plural.
1. I shall see	1. We shall see
2. You will see Thou wilt see	2. You will see Ye will see
	Ye will see
3. He will see	3. They will see

Conjugate the verb to see, in the indicative mode, present tense;—past tense;—future tense;—present perfect;—past perfect;—future perfect. In the infinitive present;—present perfect. In the imperative. Give the participles.

#### PRESENT PERFECT TENSE.

INESEMI IERRECI	TENSE.
Singular.	Plural.
1. I have seen	1. We have seen
2. You have seen Thou hast seen	2. You have seen Ye have seen
Thou hast seen	Ye have seen
3. He has seen	3. They have seen

#### PAST PERFECT TENSE.

	PAST PERFECT	TENSE.
Singular.		Plural.
1. I had seen		1. We had seen
2. You had seen Thou hadst se	en	2. You had seen Ye had seen
3. He had seen		3. They had seen

### FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

singuar.	Plural.
1. I shall have seen	1. We shall have seen
<ol> <li>You will have seen</li> <li>Thou wilt have seen</li> <li>He will have seen</li> </ol>	<ul> <li>You will have seen</li> <li>Ye will have seen</li> <li>They will have seen</li> </ul>

### INFINITIVE MODE.

Present, To see Present perfect, To have seen.

# IMPERATIVE MODE.

### PRESENT TENSE.

Singular, See, or { See you See thou	Plural, See, or	See you See ye
		12

# PARTICIPLES.

Imperfect, Seeing Perfect, Having seen

§ 153. Synopsis of To See.

#### INDICATIVE.

Present,	I see	Present perfect,	I have seen
Past,	I saw	Past perfect,	I had seen
Future,	I shall see	Future perfect,	I shall have seen

#### INFINITIVE.

Present, To see Present perfect, To have seen

Give the synopsis of to see.

# IMPERATIVE. Present, See, or See thou or you

#### PARTICIPLES.

Imperfect, Seeing

Perfect, Having seen

### PROGRESSIVE FORM OF THE VERB.

§ 154. The progressive form of a verb is employed to denote the continuance of an action or state. It is composed of an imperfect participle and one of the forms of the verb to be; as, "I am writing a letter;" — "He is studying French."

§ 155. Synopsis of To Write, in the Progressive Form.

### INDICATIVE.

Pres., I am writing Past, I was writing Fut., I shall be writing

Pres. perf., I have been writing Past perf., I had been writing Fut. perf., I shall have been writing

#### INFINITIVE.

Present, To be writing Present perfect, to have been writing

#### IMPERATIVE.

Present, Be writing, or Be thou or you writing

#### PARTICIPLES.

Imperfect, Writing Perfect, Having been writing

# The Auxiliary Do.

§ 156. In sentences which express emphasis, interrogation, or negation, the present and past tenses of the indicative and subjunctive modes, and the present imperative, are often formed by the aid of the auxiliary verb do; as, "I do know it to be true;" — "Do you intend to return to-morrow?"—"I do not understand you."

What is the progressive form of a verb? Of what is it composed? Give the synopsis of to write, in the progressive form. In what sentences is the auxiliary do employed? Examples. What tenses are often formed by the aid of the auxiliary do?

# § 157. Synopsis of To Hear, with the Auxiliary Do.

#### INDICATIVE.

Present, I do hear

Past, I did hear

#### SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present, If I do hear

Past, If I did hear

#### IMPERATIVE.

Present, Do hear, or Do thou or you hear.

Rem. — Do, as a principal verb, is conjugated like other irregular verbs.

### INTERROGATIVE FORM.

§ 158. In interrogative sentences, when the verb has no auxiliary, the nominative is placed after the verb; when one auxiliary is used, the nominative is placed between the auxiliary and the principal verb; and when more auxiliaries than one are employed, the nominative is placed after the first.

§ 159. Synopsis of To Hear, used Interrogatively.

### INDICATIVE.

Pres., Hear I? or Do I hear?

Past, Heard I? or Did I hear?

Past, Perf., Have I hear?

Past perf., Had I heard?

Fut. perf., Shall I have heard?

### NEGATIVE FORM.

§ 160. A verb is conjugated negatively by introducing the adverb not in connection with it; as, I know not; I do not know; I shall not have known; I should not have been known.

### EXERCISES.

§ 161. "I was." — "He had been." — "They think." — "We will return." — "Strive to improve." — "It is found." -"If we shall hear." - "Thou canst see." - "If he had been." — "If he would learn." — "Shall I read?" — "Can it be understood?"-" Honor thy father and thy mother."

Give the synopsis of to hear, with the auxiliary do. What is the place of the nominative, in interrogative sentences? Give the synopsis of the verb to hear, used interrogatively. How is a verb conjugated negatively? Examples.

Give the mode, tense, number, and person of each of the verbs in the foregoing sentences. Which of them are in the potential form of the indicative mode? Which in the potential form of the subjunctive?

Mention a verb in the third person plural of the past perfect subjunctive. One in the present imperative. One in the present perfect infinitive. One in the first person singular of the future perfect indicative. One in the third person singular of the present or future indicative, and potential form. Mention three perfect participles. Three imperfect participles. Mention a verb in the third person singular of the present perfect indicative, and passive voice. Give the mode, tense, person, number, and voice of the following verbs:—will write;—was written;—began;—to have been seen;—had heard. [A variety of similar directions should be added by the teacher.]

Write sentences containing examples of verbs in the common form of the indicative and subjunctive modes;—in the potential indicative and potential subjunctive;— in the imperative and infinitive modes;—containing examples of both imperfect and perfect participles;—of verbs in the passive voice;—containing examples of shall and will, correctly employed.

### IRREGULAR VERBS.

- § 162. An *irregular verb* is one that does not form its past tense and perfect participle by adding d or ed to the present; as, see, saw, seen; go, went, gone.
- § 163. The following list comprises nearly all the simple irregular verbs in our language.

REM. 1. — When more forms than one are used in the past tense or perfect participle, that which stands first is to be preferred.

### LIST OF IRREGULAR VERBS.

Present.	Past.	Perf. Part.
Abide	abode	abode .
Am or be	was	been

What is an irregular verb? Examples. Give the past tenses and perfect participle of the verb abide;—of the verb am;—of the verb awake. [The teacher should proceed in this manner through the list, and repeat the exercise till the pupils are able to name with readiness the past tense and perfect participle of all the irregular verbs.]

	Present.	Past.	Perf. part.
	Awake	awoke, awaked	awaked
(	Bear (to bring forth)	bore, bare*	born
3	Bear (to sustain) for-	bore, bare*	borne
	Beat	beat	beaten, beat
	Begin	began	begun -
	Bend, un-	bent, bended	bent ·
	Bereave	bereft, bereaved	bereft, bereaved
	Beseech	besought	besought
	Bid, for-	bid, bade	bidden, bid
	Bind, un-, re-	bound	bound
	Bite	bit	bitten, bit
	Bleed	bled	bled
	Blow	blew	blown
	Break	broke, brake*	broken
	Breed	bred	bred
	Bring	brought	brought
	Build, re-, up-	built, builded	built, builded
	Burn	burned, burnt	burned, burnt
	Burst -	burst	burst
	Buy	bought	bought
	Cast	cast	cast
	Catch	caught, catched†	caught, catched†
	Chide	chid	chidden, chid
	Choose	chose	chosen
(	Cleave (to adhere)	cleaved, clave*	cleaved
١	Cleave (to split)	clove, cleft, clave*	cloven, cleft
ì	Cling	clung	clung
	Clothe	clothed, clad	clothed, clad
	Come, be-, over-	came	come
	Cost	cost	cost
	Creep	crept	crept
	Crow	crowed, crew	crowed
	Cut	cut	cut
	Daret (to venture)	dared, durst	dared
		dealt, dealed	dealt, dealed
	Dig	dug, digged	dug, digged
	Do, un,- mis-, over-	did	done
	Draw, with-	drew	drawn
	Dream	dreamed, dreamt	dreamed, dreamt
	Drink	drank	drank, drunk
	Drive	drove, drave*	driven

<sup>\*</sup> Obsolete. † Obsolescent. ‡ Dare, to challenge, is regular.

Drank is also given as a perfect participle of drink by Sanborn, Webster, Goldsbury, Jenkins, Kirkham, Powers, Fletcher, R. W. Green, Frazee, Parkhurst, Badgley, Jones, Davis, Weld, Day, Whiting, Beall, and others.

Examples: — "Bats and hideous birds had drank up the oil which nourished the perpetual lamp in the temple of Odin."—Johnson. "The cold

<sup>§ &</sup>quot;From the disagreeable idea excited by the participle drunk, drank has been long in polite usage adopted instead of it."—Walker, the Lexicographer.
"If we mistake not, drank is oftener used by good writers than drunk or drunken."—Fowle.

Present.	Past.	Perf. Part.
Dwell	dwelt, dwelled	dwelt, dwelled
Eat	ate, eat	eaten
Fall, be-	fell	fallen
Feed	fed	fed
Feel	felt	felt
Fight	fought	fought
Find	found	found
Flee	fled	fled
Fling	flung	flung
Fly	flew	flown
Forsake	forsook	forsaken
Freeze	froze	frozen
	freighted	fraught, freighted
Freight Got he for	mot mot*	cot cotton
Get, be-, for- Gild	got, gat*	got, gotten gilded, gilt
	gilded, gilt	gilded, gill
Gird, be-, un-, en -	girt, girded	girt, girded given
Give, for-, mis-	gave	gone
Go, fore-, under-	went	
Grave, en-	graved	graven, graved
Grind	ground	ground
Grow	grew	grown
Hang‡	hung	hung
Have	had	had
Hear, over-	heard	heard
Heave	heaved, hove	heaved, hoven*
Hew	hewed	hewn, hewed
Hide	hid	hidden, hid
Hit	hit	hit
Hold, be-, with-, up-	held	held, holdenf
Hurt	hurt	hurt
Keep	kept	kept
Kneel	kneeled, knelt	kneeled, knelt
Knit	knit, knitted	knit, knitted
Know, fore-	knew	known
Lades (to load)	laded	laden
Lay (to place), in-	laid	laid
Lead, mis-	led	led
Leave	left	left
Lend	lent	lent
Let	let	let
Lie    (to recline)	lay	lain

water that was drank."—Pres. Hopkins. "The man hath drank."—Southey. "Such a discourse could have emanated only from a mind which had drank deeply from the fountains of experience, observation, and reflection."—Horace Mann.

"It is a sultry day; the sun has drank
The dew that lay upon the morning grass."—Bryant.

\* Obsolete. † Obsolescent.

† Hang, to take away life by hanging, is regular; as, "Judas departed, and went and hanged himself."

<sup>§</sup> Lade, to dip, is regular.

<sup>||</sup> Lie, to deceive, is regular.

Present.	Past.	Perf. Part.
Light .	lighted, lit	lighted, lit
Load, un-, over-	loaded	loaded, loaden*
Lose	lost	lost
Make	made	made
Mean	meant	meant
Meet	met	met
Mow	mowed	mown, mowed
Pay, re-	paid	paid
Pen† (to enclose)	penned, pent	pent, penned
Put	put	put put
Quit	quit, quitted	quitted, quit
Read	read	read
Rend	rent	rent
Rid	rid	rid
Ride	rode, rid*	rode, ridden, rid*
Ring	rang, rung	rung
Rise, a-	rose	risen
Rive	rived	riven
Run, out-	ran	run
Saw	sawed	sawn, sawed
Say, un-, gain.	said	said
See, fore-	saw	seen
Seek	sought	sought
Seethe	seethed, sod	seethed, sodden
Sell	sold	sold
Send	sent .	sent
Set, be-	set	set
Sit (to rest)	sat	sat
Shake	shook	shaken
Shape, mis-	shaped	shaped, shapen
Shave	shaved	shaved, shaven
Shear	sheared	shorn, sheared
Shed	shed	shed
Shine	shone, shined	shone, shined
Shoe	shod	shod
Shoot, over-	shot	shot
Show or shew	showed or shewed	shown or shewn
Shred	shred	shred
Shrink	shrunk, shrank	shrunk
Shut	shut	shut
Sing	sang, sung	sung
Sink	sunk, sank	sunk
Slay	slew	slain
Sleep	slept	slept
Slide	slid	slidden, slid
Sling	slung, slang*	slung
Slink	slunk	slunk
Slit	slit, slitted	slit, slitted
Smite	smote	smitten, smit
	_	sown sowed
Sowt (to scatter)	sowed	sown, sowed

Present.	Past.	Perf. Part.
Speak, be-	spoke, spake*	spoken, spoke
Speed	sped	sped
Spell, mis-	spelled, spelt	spelled, spelt
Spend, mis-	spent	spent
Spill	spilt, spilled	spilt, spilled
Spin	spun, span*	spun
Spitt	spit, spat*	spit, spitten*
Split	split	split
Spread, over-, be-	spread	spread
Spring	sprang, sprung	sprung
Stand, with-, under-	stood	stood
Steal	stole	stolen
Stick	stuck	stuck
Sting	stung	stung
Stride, be-	strode, strid	stridden, strid
Strike	struck	struck, stricken*
String	strung	strung
Strive	strove	striven
Ctuam au Ctuam he	strowed or strewed	strown, strowed
Strow or Strew, be-	showed of shewed	strewn, strewed
Swear, for-	swore, sware*	sworn
Sweat	sweat, sweated	sweat, sweated
Sweep	swept	swept
Swell	swelled	swollen, swelled
Swim	swam, swum	swum
Swing [re-, over-	swung	swung
Take, mis-, under-, be-,	took	taken
Teach, un,- mis-	taught	taught
Tear	tore, tare*	torn
Tell, fore-	told	told
Think, be-	thought	thought
Thrive	throve, thrived	thriven, thrived
Throw, over-	threw	thrown
Thrust	thrust	thrust
Tread, re-	trod	trodden, trod
Wax	waxed	waxed, waxen
Wear	wore	worn
Weave, un-	wove	woven, wove
Weep	wept	wept
Wet	wet, wetted	wet, wetted
Whet	whetted, whet	whetted, whet
Win	won	won
Wind, un-	wound	wound
Work	worked, wrought	worked, wrought
Wring	wrung, wringed	wrung, wringed
Write	wrote, writ*	written, writ

REM. 2. — When the past tense is a monosyllable not ending in a single vowel, the second person singular of the solemn style is generally

<sup>\*</sup> Obsolete.

<sup>‡</sup> Spit, to put on a spit, is regular.

formed by the addition of est; as, heardest, fleddest, tookest. Hadst, wast, saidst, and didst, are exceptions.

REM. 3. — Compound verbs (except welcome and behave, which are regular) are conjugated like the simple verbs from which they are formed; as, see, saw, seen; foresee, foresaw, foreseen.

### DEFECTIVE VERBS.

§ 164. A defective verb is one that cannot be used in all the modes and tenses. Thus, we cannot say, "I had could," "I shall can," etc.

The defective verbs are can, could, may, might, shall, should, will, would, must, ought, quoth, and beware.

### UNIPERSONAL VERBS.

§ 165. A unipersonal\* verb is one that is used only in the third person singular; as, It hails; It snows; It behoves.

Rem. — Methinks is an anomalous word, compounded of me and thinks. It is generally ranked with unipersonal verbs.

### EXERCISES.

§ 166. Write sentences containing examples of irregular verbs; — of defective verbs; - of unipersonal verbs.

How are compound verbs conjugated? What is a defective verb? Enumerate the defective verbs. What is a unipersonal verb? Examples.

<sup>\*</sup> The term impersonal is commonly applied to this class of verbs; but \* The term impersonal is commonly applied to this class of verbs; but a word which is always employed in one of the three grammatical persons, cannot, with any degree of propriety, be said to be without person.

"As to the verbs which some grammarians have called impersonal, there are, in fact, no such things in the English language." — Cobbett.

"This form is commonly called impersonal; but this denomination is incorrect and inadmissible, since these verbs are really in the third person."

Hiley denominates these verbs monopersonal; and De Sacy, Sutcliffe, and Morgan, call them verbs of the third person. The term unipersonal is adopted in the English grammars of Crane and Fowle, in Bachi's Italian Grammar, and in the French grammars of Bolmar and Bugard.

# THE ADVERB.

§ 167. An Adverb\* is a word used to modify the sense of a verb, an adjective, or another adverb; as, "He is not understood;"—"He speaks very fluently;"—"A remarkably diligent boy."

REM. 1. — Adverbs generally express in one word what would otherwise require two or more. Thus, now is used for at this time; there, for in that place.

REM. 2. — Many adverbs are formed by the union of two or more words. Thus, indeed is composed of in and deed; sometimes, of some and times; herein, of here and in.

§ 168. Adverbs may be divided into several classes, of which the following are the most important:—

- 1. Adverbs of Manner; as, justly, rapidly.
- 2. Of Place; as, here, there.
- 3. Of Time; as, now, soon, lately.
- 4. Of Degree; as, more, less, hardly.
- 5. Of Affirmation; as, yes, certainly, doubtless.
- 6. Of Negation; as, not, no.

Rem. 1. — Other classes might be enumerated, but they are less distinctly marked; and the different uses of adverbs are so numerous that a perfect classification is impracticable.

REM. 2. — The words to-day, to-night, to-morrow, and yesterday, though sometimes classed with adverbs, are properly nouns.

# CONJUNCTIVE ADVERBS.

§ 169. A conjunctive adverb is one that performs the office of a modifier and also of a connective; as, "When Crusoe saw the savages, he became greatly alarmed."

# COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

§ 170. Many adverbs, like adjectives, admit of comparison.

What is an adverb? Examples. Name the principal classes of adverbs, and give examples of each. What is a conjunctive adverb? Examples.

<sup>\*</sup> The term adverb is derived from the two Latin words, ad and verbum, which signify to a verb.

Most of those ending in ly are compared by more and most; as, wisely, more wisely, most wisely.

A few are compared by adding er and est; as, soon, sooner, soonest.

The following are compared irregularly: -

Far, { farther, farthest further, furthest Well, better, best

Little, less, least Much, more, most Ill or badly, worse, worst.

### EXERCISES.

§ 171. "The tree grows very rapidly." — "Iron is much harder than copper." — "Fortune sometimes favors those whom she afterwards destroys." — "Diligence is seldom unrewarded." — "Truth never fears examination, however rigid it may be." — "Whatever is done willingly is done well."

Point out the adverbs in the foregoing sentences. Give the class of each. Name three adverbs ending in ly;—three that do not end in ly.

Write sentences containing examples of adverbs which modify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs

Write sentences containing adverbs of manner, place, time, degree, affirmation, and negation.

# THE PREPOSITION.

§ 172. A *Preposition\** is a word used to express the relation of a noun or pronoun depending upon it, to some other word in the sentence; as, "He went *from* Boston to Albany;" — "Washington was the father of his country."

How are adverbs ending in ly generally compared? Examples. Give examples of adverbs compared by er and est; — of adverbs compared irregularly. What is a preposition? Examples.

<sup>\*</sup> The term preposition is derived from the Latin word præpositus, which signifies placed before.

REM. — In the foregoing examples, from expresses the relation between went and Boston; to, the relation between went and Albany; and, of, the relation between father and country.

§ 173. The following list of prepositions embraces most of those in common use:—

About	at	by	on	under
above	athwart	concerning	over	underneath
across	before	down	respecting	until
after	behind	during	round	unto
against	below	except	since	up
along	beneath	excepting	through	upon
amid or	beside or	for	throughout	with
amidst	besides	from	till	within
among or	between	in	to	without
amongst	betwixt	into	towards	worth*
around	beyond	of		

# THE CONJUNCTION.

§ 174. A Conjunction† is a word that is used to connect words or sentences; as, "Seven and five are twelve;"—"Straws swim on the surface; but pearls lie at the bottom."

REM. — The words belonging to this part of speech do not admit of a satisfactory division into classes.‡

# What is a conjunction? Examples.

\* "Worth has the construction of a preposition, as it admits of the objective case after it, without an intervening preposition."—Worcester's Dict.

Worth is also classed with prepositions by Davis, Everest, Jenkins, Todd,

Badgley, and others.

<sup>&</sup>quot;The word worth is often followed by an objective, or a participle which it appears to govern; as, 'If your arguments produce no conviction, they are worth nothing to me.'—'This is life indeed, life worth preserving.' It is not easy to determine to what part of speech worth here belongs. Dr. Johnson calls it an adjective, but says nothing of the objective after it, which some suppose to be governed by of understood. In this supposition, it is gratuitously assumed, that worth is equivalent to worthy, after which of should be expressed; as, 'Whatsoever is worthy of their love, is worth their anger.' But, as worth appears to have no certain characteristic of an adjective, some call it a noun, and suppose a double ellipsis; as, 'The book is [of the] worth [of] a dollar.' This is still less satisfactory; and, as the whole appears to be mere guess-work, we see no good reason why worth is not a preposition, governing the noun or participle."—G. Brown.

<sup>†</sup> The term conjunction is derived from the Latin word conjungo, which signifies to join together.

<sup>‡ &</sup>quot;The old distinction of conjunctions into copulative and disjunctive,

§ 175. The following is a list of the words most frequently employed as conjunctions : -

And although	but either	neither nor	than that	though unless
as	for	notwithstanding	then	wherefore
because	if	or	therefore	yet
both	lest.	since		

# THE INTERJECTION.

§ 176. An Interjection\* is an exclamatory word, used merely to express some passion or emotion.

The following list of interjections includes most of those which are in general use : -

Ah! alas! fie! ha! hallo! indeed! lo! O! oh! pshaw! ho! welcome! REM. — Other parts of speech are frequently used to perform the office of interjections; as, hark! surprising! mercy!

### EXERCISES.

§ 177. "Of what use are riches without happiness?" — "Whatsoever ye would that men should do to you, do ye even so to them." - "The sun, moon, and stars, admonish us of a superior and superintending power." - "Righteousness exalteth a nation; but sin is a reproach to any people." -"Whence are thy beams, O sun!"

#### What is an interjection? Examples.

was founded in error, and is, happily, going into disuse in our grammars." -Frazee.

"Conjunctions are generally divided into copulative and disjunctive; but more confusion than practical advantage seems to be derived from the division."- Goodenow.

"I shall not take up time, and confuse the understanding of the learner, by dividing the words considered as conjunctions, into copulative disjunctive, concessive, etc."—Lewis.

"The common division of the words termed conjunctions, into copulative, the words termed conjunctions are the conjunctions.

as and; disjunctive, as either, or, neither, nor, etc.; concessive, as though, although, yet; adversative, as but, however; causal, as for, because, since; illative, as therefore, wherefore, then; conditional, as if; exceptive, as unless; deserves little consideration."—Grant.

\* The term interjection is derived from the Latin word interjectus, which signifies thrown between.

Point out the prepositions, conjunctions, and interjections, in the foregoing sentences.

Write sentences containing examples of prepositions, conjunctions, and interjections.

# DERIVATION.

§ 178. Derivation is that part of Etymology which treats of the origin and primary signification of words.

REM. — The words of every cultivated language may be reduced to groups or families, each of which is composed of words related to each other by identity of origin and similarity of signification. Thus, the words justice, justify, justification, justly, adjust, reädjust, unjust, injustice, etc., are all kindred words, connected with the common parent just. So also, the words terrace, terraqueous, terrene, terrestrial, terrier, territory, inter, interment, disinter, Mediterranean, subterranean, etc., are all connected with their parent terra, the earth.

§ 179. Words are divided into two general classes:—
primitive and derivative.

A primitive word is one that is not derived from any other word or words in the language; as, man, obey.

A derivative word is one that is formed from some primitive word or words; as, manly, disobey.

# ORIGIN OF ENGLISH WORDS.

§ 180. The basis of the English language is the Anglo-Saxon, which was introduced into England from Germany about the middle of the fifth century.

Rem. — This original stock, besides being greatly modified by use, has received large additions from other languages. The inva-

What is derivation? To what may the words of every cultivated language be reduced? Examples. Into what two general classes are words divided? What is a primitive word? Examples. A derivative word? Examples. What is the basis of our language?

11

sion of the Danes and Normans introduced many Danish and Norman-French words; and a great number of Latin and Greek words have been since incorporated. We are also indebted for some of our words to the French, Italian, Spanish, German, and other languages.

### PREFIXES AND SUFFIXES.

§ 181. Most of the derivative words of our language, are formed by the aid of *prefixes* and *suffixes*.

A prefix is a letter, syllable, or word, joined to the beginning of a word; as, aloft, rebuild, overcome.

A suffix is a letter or syllable, joined to the end of a word; as, stormy, proudly, lawless.

 $\mathbf{Rem.}\ 1.$  — Most of the suffixes do not admit of precise and accurate definitions.

Rem. 2.— Two or more prefixes or suffixes are sometimes employed in the same word; as, rediscover, powerfully. Rediscover contains two prefixes, re and dis; and powerfully, two suffixes, ful and ly.

Rem. 3. — Many of the roots or essential parts of the words before which prefixes are placed, are not used as distinct words in our language.

Rem. 4.— When a prefix ends in a sound that will not readily unite with the sound of the word before which it is placed, the final letter of the prefix is oftened changed or omitted; as, ignoble, for innoble; coexist, for conexist.

# English or Saxon Prefixes.

- § 182. The following are the prefixes of English or Saxon origin, with their significations:—
  - 1. A signifies on, in, or at; as, ashore, on shore; asleep, in sleep.
- 2. Be signifies upon, over, about, etc.; as, bespeak, bedew, besprinkle.
  - 3. For signifies from or against; as, forbear, forbid.
  - 4. Fore signifies before; as, foresee, foretell.

What changes has our language undergone since the period of the Anglo-Saxons? How are most English derivatives formed? What is a prefix? Examples. What is a suffix? Examples. What is sometimes done with the final letter of a prefix?

[Pupils should be required to give the signification of each of the prefixes, with copious illustrative examples.]

- 5. Mis signifies wrong, erroneous, or defective; as, misconduct, misrule.
- 6. Out signifies beyond, more, or exterior; as, outrun, outlive, outside.
  - 7. Over implies excess or superiority; as, overdo, overcome.
  - 8. Un denotes negation or privation; as, uncertain, unbind.
- 9. Under generally signifies beneath, inferior, or subordinate; as, underlay, undermine.
  - 10. Up denotes elevation or subversion; as, upland, upset.
- 11. With generally denotes opposition or separation; as, withstand, withdraw.

# Latin Prefixes.

- § 183. The following are the principal prefixes derived from the Latin, with their significations:—
- 1. A, ab, or abs, signifies from; as, avert, to turn from; absolve, to release from; abstract, to draw from.
- 2. Ad signifies to or at; as, adjoin, to join to. In composition this prefix may become a, ac, af, ag, al, an, ap, ar, as, or at; as, ascend, accede, affix, aggrandize, allot, annex, appeal, arrest, assume, attract.
- 3. Ante signifies before; as, antecedent, going before; antediluvian, before the Flood.
- 4. Circum signifies round or about; as, circumnavigate, to sail round.
- 5. Con signifies with or together; as, convoke, to call together. This prefix takes also the forms co, cog, col, com, and cor; as, cohere, cognate, collect, compress, correlative.
- 6. Contrà signifies against; as, contradict, to speak against. This prefix is sometimes changed to counter; as, counteract.
- 7. De generally signifies from or down; as, deduce, to draw from; debase, to bring down.
- 8. Dis generally implies separation or disunion; as, dissolve. It has sometimes a negative use; as, disapprove. Dis takes also the forms di and dif; as, diverge, diffuse.
- 9. E or ex signifies out, out of, or from; as, eject, to cast out; evade, to escape from. This prefix takes also the forms ec and ef; as, eccentric, ef face.
  - 10. Extra signifies beyond, or more than; as, extraordinary.

- 11. In, before an adjective, has a negative signification, nearly equivalent to not; as, inactive, not active; insecure, not secure. Before a verb, in signifies in, into, or against; as, insert, to place in; indict, to speak against. This prefix takes also the forms en, im, ig, il, ir, and em; as, engrave, implacable, ignoble, illegal, irradiate, emboss.
- 12. Inter signifies between or among; as, intervene, to come between; intersperse, to scatter among.
- 13. Ob generally signifies against; as, obstruct, to build against. Ob takes also the forms oc, of, and op; as, occur, of fend, oppose.
- 14. Per generally signifies through or by; as, pervade, to pass through; perchance, by chance.
  - 15. Pre or præ signifies before; as, precede, to go before.
- 16. Pro signifies for, forth, or forward; as, pronoun, for a noun; provoke, to call forth; promote, to move forward.
- 17. Re signifies again or back; as, reënter, to enter again; recall, to call back.
- 18. Se denotes departure or separation; as, secede, to withdraw from.
- 19. Sub signifies under; as, subscribe, to write under. Sub has also the forms suc, suf, sug, sup, and sus; as, succeed, suffuse, suggest, support, suspend.
- 20. Super generally signifies beyond, above, or over; as, supernatural, beyond nature; supervise, to oversee. This prefix often becomes sur; as, surcharge.
- 21. Trans signifies over or beyond; as, transfer, to carry over; transatlantic, beyond the Atlantic.

# Greek Prefixes.

- § 184. The following are some of the principal prefixes derived from the Greek, with their significations:—
- 1. A or an denotes privation, and is generally equivalent to without; as, atheist, without a God; anarchy, without government.
  - 2. Anti signifies against; as, antichristian, against Christianity.
  - 3. Mono signifies single; as, monosyllable, one syllable.
  - 4. Poly signifies many; as, polysyllable, a word of many syllables.
- 5. Syn signifies with or together; as, synthesis, putting together. Syn takes also the forms sy, syl, and sym; as, system, syllogism, sympathy.

# PART III.

# SYNTAX.

- § 185. Syntax treats of the construction of sentences, according to the established laws of speech.
- § 186. A sentence is an assemblage of words making complete sense.

Sentences are of two kinds; — simple and compound.

A simple sentence is a sentence that contains only one nominative and one finite verb; as, "The sun rises in the east."

A compound sentence is one that contains two or more simple sentences; as, "Industry procures competence, and frugality preserves it;"—"He fills, he bounds, connects, and equals all."

The simple sentences which unite to form a compound sentence, are called *members* or *clauses*.

§ 187. The principal parts of a simple sentence are the subject or nominative, the verb, and the object. Thus, in the sentence, "Temperance promotes health," temperance is the subject, promotes the verb, and health the object.

REM. — A sentence in which the verb is intransitive, has only two principal parts, the subject and the verb; as, "He runs."

Of what does syntax treat? What is a sentence? Into what two general classes are sentences divided? What is a simple sentence? Examples. A compound sentence? Examples. What are the simple sentences embraced in a compound sentence called? What are the principal parts of a simple sentence? Illustrate. What are the principal parts of a sentence in which the verb is intransitive? Examples.

- § 188. A *Phrase* is a short expression, or form of speech; as, "At length;"—" Hand in hand."
- § 189. Words used to explain or modify other words, are called adjuncts. This term embraces all the words of a simple sentence except the principal parts. Many adjuncts are composed of two or more words; as, "Printing was invented in the fifteenth century." The whole phrase, "in the fifteenth century," is here an adjunct of was invented. The and fifteenth are also adjuncts of century.
- § 190. An *Idiom* is a form of expression peculiar to a language; as, "Bear with me;" "They came forward, to a man."
- Rem. The idioms of a language are not governed by the ordinary rules of syntax. A knowledge of them is therefore best acquired by observing carefully the phraseology of the best speakers and writers.
- § 191. Agreement is the correspondence of one word with another, in gender, number, person, case, or form.
- § 192. Government is the power which one word has over another, in determining its state.

# § 193. RULES OF SYNTAX.

# RULE I. - NOMINATIVES.

The subject of a finite verb must be in the nominative case; as, "The moon shines with borrowed light;"—
"Thou shalt not steal."

# RULE H. - APPOSITION.

A noun or pronoun used to identify or explain another noun or pronoun, is put, by apposition, in the same case; as, "The salutation of me, Paul;"—"Xenophon, the soldier and historian, was a disciple of Socrates."

What is a phrase? Examples. What is an adjunct? Examples. What is an idiom? Examples. What is agreement? What is government? What is the rule respecting nominatives? Examples. What is the rule respecting apposition? Examples.

RULES. 127

### RULE III. - Possessives.

The possessive case is governed by the noun which denotes the thing possessed; as, "The sun's rays;"—
"My native land."

# RULE IV. - INDEPENDENT CASE.

When a noun or pronoun is used absolutely, having no dependence on any other word, it is put in the independent case; as, "These are thy glorious works, *Parent* of good;" — "He that hath ears to hear, let him hear."

# RULE V. - PRONOUNS.

Pronouns must agree with their antecedents in gender, number, and person; as, "On the seventh day, God ended his work which he had made;"—"Every tree is known by its fruit."

# RULE VI. - PRONOUNS.

When two or more words denoting different objects are taken conjointly, forming one common antecedent, the pronoun agreeing with them must be in the plural number; as, "Virtue and good breeding render their possessors truly amiable."

# RULE VII. - PRONOUNS.

When two or more antecedents in the singular, are so connected that the pronoun agrees with each term separately, or with one of them exclusively, the pronoun should be in the singular number.

Respecting possessives? Examples. Respecting the independent case? Examples. Respecting the agreement of pronouns? Examples. Respecting the agreement of a pronoun with two or more words denoting different objects, taken conjointly? Examples. What is the rule respecting the agreement of a pronoun with each of two or more antecedents taken separately, or with one of them exclusively?

Examples: — "Man is not such a machine as a clock or a watch, which moves merely as it is moved;" — "He, and no one else, was allowed to follow his inclinations;" — "Every good act and every good purpose will receive its reward."

## RULE VIII. - ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives belong to the nouns or pronouns which they qualify or define; as, "A good man;"—" These things."

# RULE IX. — VERBS. — AGREEMENT.

A verb must agree with its nominative in number and person; as, "I go;" — "Thou seest;" — "He hears."

### RULE X. - VERBS. - AGREEMENT.

When two or more nominatives denoting different objects are taken conjointly, forming one common subject, the verb agreeing with them should be in the plural number; as, "Socrates and Plato were eminent philosophers;"—"The air, the earth, the water, teem with delighted existence."

# Rule XI. — Verbs. — Agreement.

When two or more singular nominatives are so connected that the verb agrees with each subject separately, or with one of them to the exclusion of the others, the verb should be in the singular number.

Examples:—"Duty, and not interest, was his constant rule of action;"—
"Nor cloud, nor speck, nor stain, breaks the serene of heaven;"—
"Neither astrology, nor alchemy, deserves the name of a science;"—
"In every tribe, superstition, or gratitude, or fortune, has exalted a particular family;"—"Cæsar, as well as Cicero, was remarkable for

Examples. What is the general rule for adjectives? Examples. The rule respecting the agreement of verbs? Examples. Respecting the agreement of a verb with two or more nominatives denoting different objects taken conjointly? Examples.

RULES. 129

his eloquence;"—" Thine is the kingdom, and the power, and the glory."

"Every tongue and every eye

Does homage to the passer-by."

### RULE XII. - VERBS. - GOVERNMENT.

Transitive verbs govern the objective case; as, "I have heard him;" — "Honor thy father and thy mother."

### RULE XIII. - SAME CASE.

Intransitive and passive verbs have the same case after them as before them, when both words refer to the same person or thing; as, "Society is the true sphere of human virtue;"—"They wished him to be their king;"—"He soon became the leader of his party;"—"He was chosen librarian;"—"Homer has been styled the prince of poets."

RULE XIV. - GOVERNMENT OF THE INFINITIVE.

The infinitive mode may be governed by a verb, a noun, or an adjective; as, "Strive to improve;"—"I am in haste to return;"—"The ship was ready to sail."

# RULE XV. - TENSES.

In the use of verbs, those tenses should be employed which express correctly the sense intended.

# RULE XVI. - PARTICIPLES.

Participles relate to nouns or pronouns; as, "He stood leaning on his spade, and gazing at the brightness in the west."

What is the rule respecting two or more single nominatives so connected that the verb agrees with each separately, or with one to the exclusion of the others? Examples. What is the rule respecting transitive verbs? Examples. Respecting the same case? Examples. Respecting the government of infinitives? Examples. What is the rule respecting tenses? What is the rule respecting participles? Examples.

### RULE XVII. - ADVERBS.

Adverbs modify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs; as, "Men frequently contend for trifles;"—"It was very thankfully received."

# RULE XVIII. - CONJUNCTIONS.

Conjunctions connect words or sentences; as, "Idleness and ignorance are the parents of many vices;"—
"He fled because he was afraid."

# RULE XIX. - PREPOSITIONS. - RELATION.

Prepositions connect words, and show the relation between them.

Examples: — "He travelled for pleasure;" — "They were destitute of food;" — "This is an age of improvement;" — "Ambassadors were sent previously to the declaration."

# RULE XX. - PREPOSITIONS. - GOVERNMENT.

Prepositions govern the objective case; as, "They came to us in the spirit of kindness;" — "From him that is needy, turn not away."

# Rule XXI. - Interjections.

Interjections have no grammatical relation to the other words of a sentence; as, "These were delightful days; but, alas! they are no more."

# RULE XXII. - GENERAL RULE.

The different parts of a sentence should be made to harmonize with one another; and the several clauses should be so constructed and arranged as to express

What is the rule respecting adverbs? Examples. Respecting conjunctions? Examples. Respecting the relation expressed by prepositions? Examples. What do prepositions govern? Examples. What is the rule respecting interjections? Examples. What is the general rule of syntax?

RULES. 131

clearly the various relations, connections, and dependences intended, according to the best usages of the language.

### PARSING.

§ 194. Parsing is an explanation of the properties and offices of words, according to the principles of grammar.

### ORDER OF PARSING.

A Noun, and why? — Common or Proper, and why? — Gender, and why? — Person, and why? — Number, and why? — Case, and why? — Disposal, and Rule.

An Adjective, and why? — Class, and why? — If a descriptive adjective, give the Degree of Comparison, with the reason. — Compare it. — Disposal, and Rule.

In parsing an Article, the pupil should tell whether it is Definite or Indefinite, and why; to what it belongs; and assign the Rule. See Models for Parsing, under Rule VIII.

A Pronoun, and why? — Class, and why? — Gender, Number, and Person, and why? — [If a Relative Pronoun, point out its antecedent, and tell what clauses are connected by it.] — Case, and why? — Decline it, if declinable. — Disposal, and Rule.

A Verb, and why? — Regular or Irregular, and why? — Principal parts. — Transitive or Intransitive, and why? — [If transitive, tell whether it is in the Active or Passive Voice.] — Mode, and why? — Tense, and why? — Person and Number, and why? — Disposal, and Rule.

In parsing a *Participle*, the following order should be observed:—A Participle, and why?—Principal parts of the verb.—Perfect or Imperfect, and why?—Transitive or Intransitive, and why?—[If Transitive, tell whether it is in the Active or Passive Voice.]—Disposal, and Rule.

An Adverb, and why? — Class, and why? — Disposal, and Rule.

A Preposition, and why? - Relation expressed, and Rule.

A Conjunction, and why? - Connection, and Rule.

An Interjection, and why? — Rule.

[The Order of Parsing here given, and the Models of Parsing introduced in connection with the Exercises, are inserted for the guidance of young learners. It will often be found expedient, in parsing, to omit the etymological modifications of a word, and give only its syntax or constructive office in the sentence. Advanced classes should attend less to the common Order of Parsing, and more to the Analysis of language. It is hoped that teachers will take special pains to render the exercises in parsing as intellectual as possible. Pupils should be taught that correct parsing always requires correct thinking; and that it is indispensably necessary for them to understand thoroughly the sense of any piece of writing before they attempt to parse it. They should be required to explain the more difficult passages, by transposing the order of the words, or by expressing the sense in their own language; but the words employed by the author should be preserved unaltered in parsing. See remarks prefixed to §§ 233 and 245.]

### NOUNS AND PRONOUNS.

### RULE I. - NOMINATIVES.

§ 195. The subject of a finite verb must be in the nominative case; as, "The moon shines with borrowed light;"—"Thou shalt not steal."

REMARK 1.—A verb in the infinitive mode, a sentence, or a phrase, sometimes performs the office of a noun or pronoun in the nominative; as, "To err is human;"—"That one man should be punished for the crimes of another is unjust."

Rem. 2.—In poetry, the nominative is sometimes omitted; as, "Lives there who loves his pain?" When the verb is in the imperative mode, the nominative is frequently omitted, both in prose and poetry; as, "Take care of the minutes, and the hours will take care of themselves."

Rem. 3.—In declaratory and conditional sentences, the nominative usually precedes the verb; but in interrogative and imperative sentences, the nominative most commonly follows either the principal verb or an auxiliary.

What is the rule respecting nominatives? Examples. What is sometimes used to supply the place of a noun or pronoun in the nominative? Examples. What position does the nominative usually take in declaratory and conditional sentences? Interrogative and imperative sentences?

OBSERVATION 1.— The nominative is also placed after the verb:—

1. When a sentence is introduced by the expletive adverb there; as, "There are many good pieces in this collection." 2. When a supposition is expressed without the use of the conjunction if; as, "Were there no difference, there would be no choice." 3. When a sentence is introduced by neither or nor, not used as a correspondent to another conjunction; as, "The eye which saw him shall see him no more, neither shall his place any more behold him."

Obs. 2.—When who, which, or what, is used as the subject of the verb in an interrogative sentence, and also when which or what is used as an adjective belonging to the subject, the nominative precedes the verb; as, "Who is there to oppose him?"—"What object will be accomplished?"

Obs. 3.— Besides the cases here enumerated, there are many others in which the nominative may either precede or follow the verb, and for which no definite rules can be given.

# RULE II. - APPOSITION.

§ 196. A noun or pronoun used to identify or explain another noun or pronoun, is put, by apposition, in the same case; as, "The salutation of me, Paul;"—
"Xenophon, the soldier and historian, was a disciple of Socrates."

Rem. 1. — Apposition signifies adding to, and denotes that another name is added for the same person or thing.

Rem. 2. — A noun is sometimes put in apposition with a sentence or phrase; as, "He permitted me to make free use of his valuable library; — a kindness which I shall always remember with gratitude."

REM. 3.—A noun denoting a whole is sometimes followed by two or more words in apposition with it, denoting the parts of which it is composed; as, "They travelled in company, some on horseback, some in carriages, and others on foot."

Rem. 4.—A distributive term in the singular number, or a word in the singular modified by a distributive, is often put in apposition with a noun or pronoun in the plural; as, "They have fallen, each in his field of glory."—Cowper. "They fled, every man into his tent."—1 Sam. 4:10.

What is the rule respecting apposition? Examples. With what besides a noun or pronoun is a noun sometimes in apposition? Examples. What remark is made respecting words denoting the several parts of a whole? Examples. What is the remark respecting a distributive term in the singular number, or a word in the singular modified by a distributive? Examples.

Rem. 5.—In the phrases one another and each other, the words one and each have a construction similar to that described in the last Remark; as, "They confide in each other;"—"Bear ye one another's burdens." In the former of these sentences, each is in apposition with they, and other is governed by the preposition in. In the latter, one is in apposition with ye, and another's is governed by burdens.

Rem. 6.— Two or more proper names, applied to the same individual, may be regarded as forming one complex noun; as, "Thomas Jefferson was the third president of the United States."

Rem. 7.—Anomalous expressions sometimes occur, in which a noun used without the sign of possession, is put in apposition with a noun or pronoun in the possessive case; \* as, "This did not prevent John's being acknowledged and solemnly inaugurated Duke of Normandy."—Henry's Hist. of Brit. "His eminence as a judge was great and undeniable."—Brougham. See Rule 18, Rem. 10.

# Rule III. - Possessives.

§ 197. The possessive case is governed by the noun which denotes the thing possessed; as, "The sun's rays;"—"My native land." See § 94, Rem. 5.

Rem. 1.—When the governing word is rendered obvious by the use of the possessive, it is frequently omitted; as, "I called at the bookseller's;" that is, "at the bookseller's store."

Rem. 2. — When the thing possessed belongs to two or more possessors conjointly, the sign is annexed to the last only of the possessive nouns; as, "Mason and Dixon's line;"—" Andrews and Stoddard's Grammar;"—" Allen, Morrill, and Wardwell's store." But when different things of the same name belong severally to

Explain and illustrate the construction of the phrases, each other and one another? What is said of two or more proper names, applied to the same individual? Examples. What is the rule respecting possessives? Examples. What use is made of the sign when the thing possessed belongs to two or more possessors conjointly? Examples. What, when different things of the same name belong severally to two or more possessors? Examples.

<sup>\*</sup> Grammarians differ widely in opinion respecting the proper mode of parsing words of this class. In the sentence quoted from Henry's History, G. Brown and Goldsbury would make the word Duke a possessive, in apposition with John's. Sanborn would make it independent. Butler would call it a predicate nominative. Hart would say that Duke is used in the nominative indefinite. Bullions would make it an objective.

two or more possessors, the sign should be annexed to each possessive; as, "Webster's, Worcester's, and Smart's Dictionary;" that is, Webster's Dictionary, Worcester's Dictionary, and Smart's Dictionary.

REM 3.— Two or more words closely united, and forming essentially one complex noun, have the sign annexed to the last only; as, "Henry the Eighth's reign;"—"Thomas Jefferson's administration;"—"John the Baptist's head."

Rem. 4. — When two or more possessive nouns in apposition are governed by a noun *expressed*, the governing word is usually placed after the others, and the sign annexed to the last only of the possessives; as, "For David my *servant's* sake."

Rem. 5. — When an explanatory term consisting of several words, or a number of explanatory terms, are subjoined to a noun in the possessive, and the governing word is understood, the sign is generally annexed to the first possessive only; as, "I left the book at Johnson's, a respectable bookseller, and a worthy man."

Rem. 6.—Other cases sometimes occur for which no certain rule can be given. Thus, we may say, "I called at Mr. Brown, the jeweller's," or "I called at Mr. Brown's the jeweller;" since both these forms are authorized by usage.

REM. 7. — When a noun or pronoun, preceding a participle used as a noun, is properly in the possessive case, the sign of possession should not be omitted.

Correct Examples: — "A great public, as well as private advantage, arises from every one's devoting himself to that occupation which he prefers, and for which he is specially fitted." — Wayland. "This is known by the moon's always keeping nearly the same face towards us." — Olmsted.

False Syntax:—"Such is the advantage we receive from the chain being composed of so many links, the spine of so many bones."—Paley. "There was a chance of him recovering his senses."—Macaulay. "A contemporary scholar speaks of the author being unknown."—Thomas Campbell.

What, when two or more words closely united, form one complex noun? Examples. What is said respecting two or more possessives in apposition, governed by a noun expressed? Examples. What care should be observed respecting possessives before participial nouns? Examples. Correct the false syntax, and show why it is false.

Rem. 8. — When we wish to mention a part only of the objects possessed, we should employ both the preposition of and the possessive case; as, "An anecdote of Dr. Franklin's;" — "These poems are as good as some of Dana's."

Rem. 9.—An explanatory clause should never be inserted between a possessive noun and the word by which it is governed. The following sentence is faulty in this respect:— "She began to extol the farmer's, as she called him, excellent understanding." It should be, "She began to extol the excellent understanding of the farmer, as she called him."

### RULE IV. - INDEPENDENT CASE.

§ 198. When a noun or pronoun is used absolutely, having no dependence on any other word, it is put in the independent case; as, "These are thy glorious works, Parent of good;"—"He that hath ears to hear, let him hear."

REM. 1. — This rule applies, —

- (1) When a direct address is made, and the noun or pronoun has no dependence on the rest of the sentence; as, "The fault, dear *Brutus*, is not in our stars, but in ourselves." This is the case independent by address.
- (2) When a noun or pronoun is joined with a participle having no dependence on any other word; as, "The sun having risen, we departed on our journey." This is the case independent with a participle.
- (3) When a noun is used to introduce the subject of remark, and then left independent of the rest of the sentence; as, "The Pilgrim fathers, where are they?" This is the case independent by pleonasm.\*

Obs. 1. — This redundant use of the noun or pronoun is generally inelegant, but in poetry and animated prose it is sometimes employed with happy effect.

OBS. 2. — A plural term is sometimes used emphatically after a series

What is the rule respecting the independent case? Examples. Name the several circumstances under which nouns and pronouns are used independently, and give examples of each kind.

<sup>\*</sup> For several of the divisions embraced in this classification of words in the independent case, the author is indebted to the excellent treatise of Mr. G. Brown.

of words or phrases comprehended under it; as, " Ease, fortune, life, ALL were squandered." - Bancroft. In this sentence, the words ease, fortune, and life, may be regarded as independent by pleonasm. So also, in the following sentence, the infinitive verbs may be regarded as independent or absolute by pleonasm: — " To be murdered, to be tortured, to be robbed, to be sold into slavery, to be exposed to the outrages of gangs of foreign banditti calling themselves patriots, - these are evidently evils from which men of every religion and men of no religion wish to be protected." -Macaulay.

- (4) When a noun or pronoun is used to express an exclamation; as, "Oh, the miseries of war!" This is the case independent by exclamation.
- (5) When a noun, having no dependence on any other word, is used to express a name or title, as, "The Sketch Book," "Day's Algebra;" or to denote time, measure, distance, direction, or place, as, "He left the country ten years ago," "The tree was found to be eighty feet in height," "He walked twelve miles." case independent by ellipsis.

OBS. - This class of words in the independent case is not intended to include those nouns before which a preposition is properly understood. In all such examples the preposition should be supplied in parsing, and the noun made to depend upon it in the objective case. There are, however, instances in which the noun is not properly dependent on a preposition either expressed or implied; and examples of this class should be put in the independent case.\*

REM. 2. - A noun is sometimes used indefinitely after an infinitive or participle; as, "To be the slave of passion is of all slavery the most wretched." The word slave, in this sentence, may be parsed by Rule 4, in the independent case. See Rule 8, Rem. 14.

### 6 199. EXERCISES IN COMPOSITION.

[It is hoped that teachers will not fail to insist on a thorough performance of these exercises. Rules may be recited very fluently without being understood; but an application of them in the construction of sen-

"Nouns signifying the time when, and time how long, weight, measure,

<sup>\*&</sup>quot;In expressing distance or duration, either in time or space, we use the noun absolutely; as, 'He walked ten miles;'-'He stood three hours.'" - Latham.

and distance, are put in the objective case absolute."—Ainsworth.
"Lowth, followed by the whole tribe of writers on this subject, alleges some prepositions to be understood before these expressions of time; but this is a palpable error, arising from preconceived notions of the necessity of such words. The fact is otherwise. All these peculiar phrases are idiomatic; and the remains of the early state of our language."—Webster. See also Smart, J. M. Putnam, Frazee, Goldsbury, Webber, Flower, Allen and Cornwell, Cooper, Davenport, and Nutting.

tences, requires a careful attention to principles, while it also aids the learner in forming an accurate style of writing. See Oral Instruction.]

Write sentences containing nouns and pronouns in the nominative;—containing a verb in the infinitive, a sentence, or a phrase, used as the subject of a verb;—nouns and pronouns in apposition with other words;—nouns and pronouns in the possessive case;—two or more possessives, governed by a noun denoting joint possession;—two or more possessives, governed by nouns denoting different objects of the same name;—two or more words, forming essentially one complex noun in the possessive;—two or more possessives in apposition, governed by a noun expressed;—a noun or pronoun in the possessive, preceding a participial noun;—a noun or pronoun in the case independent by address;—in the case independent with a participle;—in the case independent by ellipsis.

### RULE V. - PRONOUNS.

§ 200. Pronouns must agree with their antecedents in gender, number, and person; as, "On the seventh day, God ended his work which he had made;"—"Every tree is known by its fruit."

Rem. 1. — The neuter pronoun it is one of the most general terms in the language. It may be used, —

- (1) To represent a noun in the plural number; as, "It was the heretics that first began to rail."
- (2) To represent a noun in the masculine or feminine gender; as, "It is a brother of the prince;"—"It is the queen."
- (3) To represent a noun in the first or second person; as, "It is I;"—"Is it you?"
- (4) To represent a sentence or phrase; as, "It is impossible to please all men;"—"It is observed by Seneca, that prosperity greatly obstructs the knowledge of ourselves."
- (5) To denote some state or condition; as, "It rains;"—" Has it come to this?"

What is the rule respecting the agreement of pronouns? Examples. Enumerate the peculiar uses of the pronoun it, and give examples of each.

(6) It is sometimes employed in a vague or indefinite sense; as, "During this time, they had lorded it over the land with absolute sway."—Prescott.

Obs. — In most of the cases here enumerated, it is an inceptive pronoun, used to form an easy and agreeable introduction to a sentence.

REM. 2. — The personal pronoun them should never be employed as an adjective. We should say, "Bring me those books;"—not "them books."

Rem. 3. — When two or more personal pronouns in the second person, are employed in the same connection, they should be made to correspond in style. (§§ 111, 112.) The following passage is therefore inaccurate:—

"Enjoy your dear wit, and gay rhetoric
That hath so well been taught her dazzling fence;
Thou art not fit to hear thyself convinced." — Milton.

Your should be thy, to correspond with thou and thyself.

## False Syntax.

"Ere you remark another's sin,
Bid thy own conscience look within." — Gay.

"What strange events can strike with more surprise
Than those which lately struck thy wondering eyes?
Yet, taught by these, confess th' Almighty just,
And where you can't unriddle, learn to trust." — Parnell.

Rem. 4.— The use of different relatives in the same sentence referring to the same antecedent, should generally be avoided. The following sentence is faulty in this respect:—"I have amused myself with remarking some of the motley characters that have thus usurped the ancient abode of royalty, and who seem as if placed here to give a farcical termination to the drama of human pride."—Irving. Who should be changed to that, to correspond with that in the preceding clause.

Rem. 5. — Monarchs and editors of periodical publications often employ the plural form of a pronoun in the first person, instead of the singular; as, "We, taking into our royal consideration the various disorders and abuses," etc. — "We charge you, on allegiance to ourself;"—"We cheerfully admit the following communication

What improper use is sometimes made of the pronoun them? Illustrate. What rule should be observed, when two or more personal pronouns in the second person are employed in the same connection? Correct the false syntax, and show why it is false. What form of expression is peculiar to sovereigns and editors of periodical publications? Examples.

140 SYNTAX.

into our columns, but do not hold ourself responsible for the sentiments which it embodies."

REM. 6.— The relative who is applied to persons, and which to irrational animals and inanimate things; as, "Homer, who wrote the Iliad;"—"The man whom we saw;"—"The horse which Alexander rode;"—"The rain which fell."

Obs. — The pronoun who should not be used to represent a name which is taken as a word merely. Thus, "The court of queen Elizabeth, who was but another name for prudence and economy," should be, "The court of queen Elizabeth, whose name was but another word for prudence and economy."

REM. 7.—The pronoun that is applied either to persons or things; as, "He that hath knowledge, spareth his words;"—"The bird that sung so sweetly;"—"The house that was built last year."

Obs. 1. — That should be employed in preference to who or which, —

- (1) When its use will prevent an unpleasant repetition of either of these pronouns; as, "Who that is not blinded by prejudice will believe this report?"
- (2) When persons form a part only of the antecedent; as, "The men and things that he saw."
- (3) After a collective noun denoting a body of persons; as, "The army that was defeated was composed of veteran soldiers."

Obs. 2. — There are other cases in which that may be employed or not, according to the taste of the writer; as, "He that formed the eye, shall he not see?" — Ps. 94:9. "He who plants an oak, looks forward to future ages, and plants for posterity." — Irving. "There is a serene and settled majesty in woodland scenery, that enters into the soul, and dilates and elevates it, and fills it with noble inclinations." — Ibid.

Rem. 8. — The possessive whose is applied to both persons and things; as, "Franklin, whose name will ever be remembered;" — "Virtue, whose reward is lasting;" — "Frowning rocks, whose lofty summits." See § 117, Note.

What distinction is observed in the use of who and which? Select several examples of each from other works. To what is the pronoun that applied? Examples. When is that employed in preference to who or which? Examples of each class. To what is the possessive whose applied? Examples.

Rem. 9.— When two or more pronouns, or nouns and pronouns, of different persons, are closely united in the same construction, the word which is in the second person should generally be placed first, and that in the first person, last; as, "You and Charles, and I, were engaged in the same transaction;"—"You and your friend were absent;"—"My brother and I were detained."

REM. 10. — The word what should not be used for the conjunction that, nor that for the compound relative what. The following sentences are faulty in this respect:—" They would not believe but what he was guilty;"—" We speak that we do know, and testify that we have seen."

Rem. 11.— Relatives should be so placed as to prevent all ambiguity in regard to the words which they are intended to represent. The following sentence is therefore objectionable:—"He is unworthy the confidence of a fellow-being that disregards the laws of his Maker." Corrected:—"He that disregards the laws of his Maker, is unworthy of the confidence of a fellow-being."

OBS.—"I am the man who command you." This sentence is ambiguous, and may be corrected in two different ways. If who is intended to refer to I, we should say, 'I who command you, am the man." But if who is intended to refer to man, then we should say, "I am the man who commands you."

Rem. 12.—In familiar language, the relative is sometimes improperly omitted. Thus, "He is a man I greatly esteem," should be, "He is a man whom I greatly esteem." So also, "I am dissatisfied with the manner I have spent my time," should be, "I am dissatisfied with the manner in which I have spent my time."

Rem. 13. — Whatever is sometimes employed merely for the purpose of rendering a word or phrase emphatic; as, "No condition whatever."

REM. 14. — What is sometimes used adverbially, in the sense of partly, or in part; as, "What with 'wooding' at two or three places, and what with the excitement of the day, we were too fatigued to give more than a glance and a passing note of admiration to the beauty of the scene." — Willis.

REM. 15.—A pronoun is frequently employed to represent a sentence or phrase; as, "Josephus received a liberal education among the Pharisees, after which he went to Rome, where he cultivated his talents to great advantage." Which here represents the whole clause, "received a liberal education among the Pharisees."

What is the rule respecting two or more pronouns, or nouns and pronouns, of different persons? Examples. What is the rule respecting the position of relatives? Illustrate. What besides nouns are often employed as the antecedents of pronouns? Examples.

142 SYNTAX.

Rem. 16.—A pronoun sometimes relates to an adjective for its antecedent; but this usage is inelegant, and should generally be avoided.\*

Rem. 17.—A pronoun sometimes relates to a verb for its antecedent; but this usage is also objectionable.†

### RULE VI .- PRONOUNS.

§ 201. When two or more words, denoting different objects, are taken conjointly, forming one common antecedent, the pronoun agreeing with them must be in the plural number; as, "Virtue and good breeding render their possessor truly amiable."

REM. — When the antecedents are of different persons, the plural pronoun referring to them should be of the first person, if either of the antecedents is of the first; but if neither of the antecedents is of the first person, the pronoun should be of the second person; as, "James and I have finished our lessons;" — "You and Henry shared it between you."

### RULE VII. - PRONOUNS.

§ 202. When two or more antecedents in the singular are so connected that the pronoun agrees with each term separately, or with one of them exclusively, the pronoun should be in the singular number; as, "Man is not such a machine as a clock or a watch, which moves merely as it is moved;"—"He, and no one else, was allowed to follow his inclinations;"—"Every good act and every good purpose will receive its reward."

What is the rule respecting the agreement of a pronoun with two or more words denoting different objects taken conjointly? Examples. What is the rule respecting the agreement of a plural pronoun with antecedents of different persons? Examples. What is the rule respecting the agreement of a pronoun with each of two or more antecedents taken separately, or with one of them exclusively? Examples.

<sup>\*&</sup>quot; If this enumeration is complete, which, of course, we would not affirm it to be." — N. A. Review.

<sup>†&</sup>quot; Nor is it less pleased with its first successful endeavors to walk, or rather to run, which precedes walking."—Paley.

REM. — When a singular and plural antecedent are joined by the connective or or nor, the pronoun agreeing with them should be in the plural number; as, "Neither he nor his friends have interested themselves in this subject."

#### EXERCISES IN COMPOSITION.

§ 203. Write sentences containing examples which illustrate the agreement of pronouns with their antecedents; — one or more examples of it, used to represent a word in the plural; — of it, representing a noun in the masculine or feminine; — containing examples of who, which, and that, correctly employed; — of whose, referring to persons; — of whose, referring to irrational animals, and things without life; — two or more pronouns, or nouns and pronouns, of different persons, joined in the same construction; — examples illustrating Rule 6th; — a plural pronoun referring to antecedents of different persons; — examples illustrating Rule 7th; — a pronoun agreeing with a singular and a plural antecedent connected by or or nor.

### § 204. EXERCISES IN PARSING.

[The words which are designed to be parsed, are printed in Italics. The sentences following the dividing line, require an application of the *Remarks* and *Observations*, and may be omitted by beginners.]

#### Model.

"His task is accomplished."

His is a pronoun, because it is a word used to supply the place of a noun; — personal, because it expresses person and number of itself; — in the masculine gender, because it denotes a male; — in the third person, because it represents a person spoken of; — in the singular number, because it implies but one object; — in the possessive case, because it denotes possession. Nom. he; Poss. his; Obj. him; Ind. he.—It is governed by task. The possessive case is governed by the noun which denotes the thing possessed.

Task is a noun, because it is used to express the name of an object;—
common, because it may be applied to any one of a whole class;—in
the neuter gender, because it denotes an object which is neither male
nor female;—in the third person, because it denotes an object spoken
of;—in the singular number, because it implies but one; and in the
nominative case, because it is the subject of the verb is accomplished.

The subject of a finite verb must be in the nominative case.

What is the rule respecting a pronoun agreeing with a singular and a plural antecedent, connected by or or nor? Examples.

"The cars have arrived."—"He who overcomes his passions conquers his greatest enemies."—"Venerable men! you have come down to us from a former generation."—"Alexander and Napoleon were destroyers of their race."—"Gibbon the historian, was an infidel."—"It was neither he nor his brother, that brought the intelligence."—"Our country is ruined, if it becomes too prosperous."—B. B. Edwards. "There is no service which a man of commanding intellect can render his fellow-creatures, better than that of leaving behind him an unspotted example."—Andrews Norton.

§ 204. "Whether teachers are to continue in the brighter ages which prophecy announces, is rendered doubtful by a very striking prediction of the times of the Messiah."—Channing.

"Scenes must be beautiful, which, daily viewed,
Please daily, and whose novelty survives
Long knowledge and the scrutiny of years;

Praise justly due to those that I describe."—Cowper.

"Edward the Confessor's tomb."—"It would be fruitless, to investigate the peculiarities of their respective institutions, which bear a very close affinity to one another."—Prescott. "John Marshall was an illustrious judge."—"Marsh, Capen, and Lyon's publications."—"These points being known, his ignorance of other points, his doubts concerning other points, affect not the certainty of his reasoning."—Paley. "These are different questions from the question of the artist's existence; or, which is the same, whether the thing before us be a work of art or not."—Ibid. "They had heard of the arrival of two independent companies twenty days before."—Sparks. "No member or members could arrogate to themselves the exclusive merit."—N. Y. Review. "It is we who are Hamlet."—Hazlitt.

"My friends, do they now and then send A wish or a thought after me?"—Cowper.

RULE VIII. - ADJECTIVES.

§ 205. Adjectives belong to the nouns or pronouns

which they qualify or define; as, "A good man;" -" These things."

REM. 1. - The adjectives this and that, these and those, must agree in number with the nouns which they define; as, this book, these books; that man, those men.

REM. 2. - When this and that are used in the sense of former and latter, this and these correspond with latter, that and those with former.

Examples: - "Religion raises men above themselves; irreligion sinks them beneath the brutes; — this [irreligion] binds them down to a pitiable speck of earth, that [religion] opens for them a prospect to the skies."

"Then palaces and lofty domes arose; -These for devotion, and for pleasure those."-Pope.

REM. 3. - Adjectives which imply unity, must be joined to singular nouns, and those which imply plurality, to nouns in the plural; as, one hour; three days; both houses; all men.

Obs. 1.— The adjective every is frequently joined to a plural noun used collectively to denote one aggregate; as, "Every ten years."

Obs. 2.— The word all is connected with singular nouns denoting quantity, and with plural nouns denoting number; as, "All the corn was consumed;" - "All things pass away."

OBS. 3. — The adjective many is sometimes placed before a singular noun, the article a or an being inserted between them; as, "Full many a

gem of purest ray serene."

- REM. 4. An adjective is sometimes used to qualify a phrase or sentence; as, "To be blind is calamitous;" - "That he should have refused the appointment, is extraordinary."
- REM. 5. An adjective is often used to qualify a noun and another adjective, taken as one compound term; as, "A venerable old man;"-" The best upland cotton."
- REM. 6. An adjective is sometimes used to modify the sense of another adjective; as, "Red hot iron;" - "Five hundred men." REM. 7. — Either is occasionally employed by good writers in the sense of each.

Examples: - "This merciless devastation extended more than two leagues on either side of the line of march."-Prescott. "The Sabine hills and the Albanian mountains stretch on either hand."-Irving.

"On either side the giant guards divide."-Southey.

What rule is observed respecting the number of the adjectives this, that, these, and those? Examples. What of adjectives which imply unity and plurality? Examples. What besides nouns and pronouns, do adjectives sometimes qualify? Examples of each class.

13

146 SYNTAX.

Rem. 8. — When an adjective is employed to express a comparison between two objects only, or objects of two different classes, it should generally take the form of the comparative; as, "Homer was the greater genius; Virgil the better artist."—Pope. "Our brig was the faster sailer of the two."—Willis. "William is taller than James;"—"William is the taller of the two;"—"George and John are more studious than James and Charles."

Obs. — Sometimes, however, the superlative form is employed when only two objects are compared;\* as, "Of the two, the English system is the safest."—Humphrey. "The largest boat of the two was cut loose."—Cooper. "Both of these opinions have the sanction of high authority, and it may be worth while to examine which of them be wisest."—N. A. Review. "I think the English one rather the best of the two."—Lockhart.

Rem. 9.— When a comparison is expressed between more than two objects of the same class, the superlative degree is employed; as, "The last of the Roman tribunes;"— "The most ancient poet;"—"The noblest of the Greeks."

Rem. 10.—In the use of comparative and superlative adjectives, care should be taken not to include a noun or pronoun in a class to which it does not belong, nor exclude it from a class to which it does belong. Thus, it would be improper to say, "Socrates was wiser than any Athenian," because Socrates was himself an Athenian, and could not be wiser than himself. The correct form would be, "Socrates was wiser than any other Athenian," or "Socrates was the wisest of the Athenians." The following sentence is also erroneous:—"The vice of covetousness, of all others, enters deepest into the soul." Covetousness is not one of the other vices, as the construction of the sentence would imply. Corrected:—"Of all the vices, covetousness enters deepest into the soul."

What is the general rule respecting an adjective used to express a comparison between two objects, or two classes of objects? Examples. What is the general rule respecting an adjective, used to express a comparison between more than two objects of the same class. Examples. What care should be observed in the use of comparatives and superlatives?

"The superlative is often more agreeable to the ear; nor is the sense in jured. In many cases a strict adherence to the comparative form renders the language too stiff and formal."—Lennie.

See also Angus's Grammar and Campbell's Philosophy of Rhetoric.

<sup>\*&</sup>quot;The strict rule laid down by grammarians, that the comparative is to be used when two things are spoken of, and the superlative when more than two are the subject of discourse, has not been observed, even by the best writers, and still less by the best speakers, and need not now be insisted on."—Connon.

Correct Examples: — "An aristocracy is, of all forms of government, the most tenacious of life, and the least flexible in its purposes."—Bancroft. "Time ought, above all other kinds of property, to be free from invasion."—Johnson. "Transcribing was, of all occupations, that which Cowper disliked the most."—Southey.

False Syntax:—"The high reputation which he afterwards obtained, came too late to gladden the heart which, of all others, would have most rejoiced in it."—Southey. "This kind of wit is that which abounds in Cowley, more than in any author that ever wrote."—Addison. "Breathing with ease, is a blessing of every moment; yet, of all others, it is that which we possess with the least consciousness."—Paley. "In the age of Elizabeth, England was more distinguished for patriotism than any nation in civilized Europe."—N. A. Review.

Rem. 11. — Double comparatives and superlatives, as worser, most straitest, should be carefully avoided.

OBS.—The word lesser is, however, sometimes employed by good writers; as, "The lesser incidents."—N. Y. Review. "Lesser sympathies."—Dana. "Of lesser note."—Goldsmith. "Fifty lesser angels."—Prof. Wilson. "Lesser graces."—Blair. "Like lesser streams."—Coleridge.

Rem. 12. — An adjective is sometimes used to perform the office of an adverb; as, "Soft sighed the flute."—Thomson. This usage is mostly confined to the poets.

REM. 13.— An adjective may be used to express an attribute or quality which results from the action of the verb with which it is connected. Adjectives of this description relate both to the verb and the noun or pronoun, and may be called adverbial adjectives.

Examples: — "The door was painted green." — "Heaven opened wide her ever-during gates." — Milton. "The exiles of a year had grown familiar with the favorite amusement of the Indians." — Bancroft. "Children just let loose from school." — Goldsmith.

Rem. 14.—An adjective is sometimes used absolutely, having no direct reference to any noun or pronoun expressed or implied; as, "The desire of being happy reigns in all hearts;"—"To be wise and good is to be great and noble." See Rule 4, Rem. 2.

Rem. 15. — Nouns are sometimes used to perform the office of adjectives, as, "A stone cistern," "A gold watch;" and adjectives to perform the office of nouns, as "The great and good of all ages."

Correct the false syntax, and show why it is false. What of double comparatives and superlatives? What is an adverbial adjective? Examples. Give examples of nouns used to supply the place of adjectives and adjectives used to supply the place of nouns.

#### ARTICLES.

REM. 16.—The article a or an belongs to nouns of the singular number only, or to nouns denoting a plurality of objects in one aggregate; as, "A house;"—"An eagle;"—"A million."

REM. 17 — The article the belongs to nouns either in the singular or plural number; as, "The President;"— "The Europeans."

REM. 18. — Articles are sometimes used to modify the sense of other adjectives; as, "A few days;" — "A thousand years;" — "So much the stronger proved he."

Rem. 19. — The article the is sometimes used to modify the sense of an adverb; as, "The longer you delay, the more your difficulties will increase."

REM. 20. — When the article a or an is placed before the words few and little, it generally changes their meaning from negative to positive. Thus, when we say, "There were few persons present," the word few is used in a negative sense, in distinction from many, to denote the smallness of the number. But when we say, "There were a few persons present," the word few is used in a positive sense, in distinction from none, to denote that there were some persons present. The expressions, "He needs little wid," and "He needs a little aid," serve also to illustrate this remark.

Rem. 21. — When two nouns following a comparative refer to different persons or things, the article should be repeated before the second noun; but when the two nouns refer to the same person or thing, the article should not be repeated. Thus, in the sentence, "He is a better soldier than a scholar," the terms soldier and scholar relate properly to different individuals, and it is implied that he is a better soldier than a scholar, would be. But, in the sentence, "He is a better soldier than scholar," the terms soldier and scholar are limited to one individual, and it is implied that he is better in the capacity of a soldier than in that of a scholar.

Rem. 22. — When two or more adjectives standing in connection are used to describe different objects of the same name, the article should generally be placed before each of them; as, "A red and a white flag;" that is, two flags, one red and the other white.

What is the rule for the agreement of the article a or an? Examples. Of the article the? Examples. What besides nouns, do articles sometimes modify? Examples of each class. What is the general rule respecting the article, when two or more adjectives standing in connection describe different objects of the same name? Examples.

But when no ambiguity is likely to arise from the omission of the article, its repetition is not essential. Thus we may say with equal propriety, "The fourteenth and the fifteenth century," or "The fourteenth and fifteenth centuries."

REM. 23.— When two or more adjectives are used to describe the same object, the article should generally be employed before the first only; as, "A red and white flag;" that is, one flag, both red and white. But when we wish to give particular prominence to each adjective, the article may be inserted before each, if no ambiguity would arise; as, "The learned, the eloquent, the patriotic Chatham."

REM. 24. — A noun taken in its widest and most general sense, is commonly used without an article; as, "Man is mortal;"—"Vice is odious;"—"Iron is the most useful of the metals;"—"He was called Master."

Obs. — Sometimes, however, the article *the* is used with a singular noun to denote the whole species, or an indefinite portion of the species; as, "The horse is a noble animal."

Rem. 25. — The article is generally omitted before proper names, and such other nouns as are of themselves sufficiently definite in their signification; as, "George Washington was born in the year 1732."—"Today is yesterday returned."—Young. There are, however, some cases, in which the use of the article before proper names, is admissible; as, "The Pyrenees;"—"The French;"—"The Earth;"—"The illustrious Franklin;"—"A Mr. William Jones addressed the meeting."

Rem. 26. — The letter a is sometimes employed by mercantile men in the sense of the preposition to;\* as, "Baltimore flour sold at \$4.50 a \$4.58;" that is, "Baltimore flour sold at prices varying from \$4.50 to \$4.58."

Obs.—A appears also to have the force of a preposition in the following and other similar examples:—"He set the public a reading."—Blackwood's Magazine. "There is some ill a brewing."—Shakspeare. In such expressions as, "Thomas a Becket," "Thomas a Kempis," a is employed in the sense of the preposition of.

Rem. 27.—A is sometimes employed as a mere expletive prefix; as, "I begin to be a-weary of thee."—Shakspeare. "Poor Tom's a-cold."—Ibid.

What exception to this rule? Examples. What is the general rule when two or more adjectives describe the same object? Examples. What exception? Examples. What of a noun taken in its widest sense? Examples.

<sup>\* &</sup>quot;This I take to be a relic of the Norman French, which was once the law and mercantile language of England; for, in French, a, with an accent, means to or at." — Cobbett.

Rem. 28.—An was formerly used as a conjunction, in the sense of if; as, "Fortune is to be honored and respected, an it be but for her daughters, Confidence and Reputation."—Bacon.

### POSITION OF ADJECTIVES.

REM. 29.—Adjectives should be so placed as to show clearly which nouns they are intended to qualify. Thus, instead of saying, "This disconsolate soldier's widow," we should say, "This soldier's disconsolate widow."

OBS. 1.— When an adjective is used to qualify another adjective and a noun, taken jointly, it should not be placed between the other adjective and the noun. Thus, in the expression, "An amiable young man," the word amiable qualifies the phrase young man; it would therefore be improper to say, "A young amiable man."

Obs. 2.—The adjective generally precedes the noun to which it belongs; as, "A patriotic citizen." But in the following cases the adjective most commonly follows the noun:—1. When some word or phrase is dependent on the adjective; as, "The knowledge requisite for a statesman;"—"A river twenty yards wide." 2. When the adjective is used as a title; as, "Alfred the Great;"—"George the Fourth." 3. When the quality expressed by the adjective is dependent on the action of a transitive verb; as, "Vanity often renders man contemptible."

Obs. 3.— When an adjective is qualified by an adverb it is sometimes placed before the noun, and sometimes after it; as, "A very good man;"—"A man conscientiously exact."

Obs. 4. — When a verb comes between an adjective and its noun, the adjective may either precede or follow the noun; as, " Great is our God;" — "Gaming is ruinous."

"How vain the ardor of the crowd, How low, how little are the proud, How indigent the great."—Gray.

Obs. 5. — When several adjectives belong to one noun, they may either precede or follow the noun; as, "A learned, wise, and amiable man," or "A man learned, wise, and amiable." The longest adjective is usually placed last.

Obs. 6. — An adjective relating to a pronoun is generally placed after the pronoun; as, "He is faithful and kind."

Obs. 7.— When a noun is preceded by an article in connection with one or more other adjectives, the article is generally placed first; as, "A great and good man." But when the words many, such, both, all, and what, are employed, they generally precede the article; as, "Many a

What rule is to be observed respecting the position of adjectives? Illustrate. What rule is to be observed respecting an adjective used to qualify another adjective and a noun? Illustrate.

day:" - "Such a favor;" - "Both the trees." The article is also placed after adjectives which are modified by as, so, how, and however; as, "How great a work."

OBS. 8. - Some grammarians object to the use of the numerals, two, three, four, etc., before the adjectives first and last. There seems, however, to be no good reason for the objection,\* and the expressions two first, three last, etc., are fully sanctioned by good usage.

Examples: - "My two last letters." - Addison. "The two first lines are uncommonly beautiful." - Blair. "At the two last schools." "The two first years." — Bancroft. "The two first days." — Irving. "The two first cantos." — A. H. Everett. "The four first centuries." — Prescott. "The two last productions." — N. A. Review. "The four first are altogether and unequivocally poetical."— Cheever. "The three first of his longer poems."— Southey.

Obs. 9.— The expressions first three, last two, etc., are also in good use, and, in some cases, are to be preferred.

Examples: — "The first eighteen years." — N. A. Review. "The history of the world for the last fifty years." — E. Everett. "During the last seven or eight years." - Brougham.

What is said of the use of numerals before the adjectives first and last? Examples. What other form is also employed? Examples.

\* "It has been fashionable of late to write the first three, and so on, instead of the three first. People write in this way to avoid the seeming absurdity of implying that more than one thing can be the first; but it is, at least, equally absurd to talk about the first four, when (as often happens) there is no second four."—Arnold.
"Surely, if there can be only 'one last,' 'one first,' there can be only 'a last one,' 'a first one.' I need only observe, that usage is decidedly in favor of the former phraseology."—Grant.

The following remarks respecting this question, are extracted from a paper read by Dr. Murdock before the New Haven Academy of Sciences:— "The only argument against the use of two first, and in favor of substituting first two, so far as I can recollect, is this. In the nature of things, there can be only one first and one last, in any series of things. But is it true that there can never be more than one first and one last? If it be so, then the adjectives first and last must always be of the singular number, and can never agree with nouns in the plural. We are told that the first years of a lawyer's practice are seldom very lucrative. The poet tells us, that his first essays were severely handled by the critics, but his last efforts have been well received. Examples like these might be produced without number. They occur everywhere in all our standard writers. \* \* When numeral adjective and a qualifying epithet both refer to the same noun, the general rule of the English language is to place the numeral first, then the qualifying epithet, and afterwards the noun. Thus we say, 'the two wise men,' 'the two tall men;' and not, 'the wise two men,' 'the tall two men.' And the same rule holds in superlatives. We say, 'the two wisest men,' 'the two tallest men;' and not 'the wisest two men,' 'the tallest two men.' Now if this be admitted to be the general rule of the English lan-

#### EXERCISES IN COMPOSITION.

§ 206. Write sentences containing examples of descriptive and definitive adjectives; — containing an adjective that qualifies a sentence or phrase; — an adjective that qualifies a noun and another adjective, taken as one compound term; — an adjective expressing a comparison between two objects only; — one expressing a comparison between more than two objects; — an adverbial adjective; — a noun used to perform the office of an adjective, and an adjective used to perform the office of a noun; — examples of the articles; — one or more examples illustrating Rem. 22nd; — Rem. 23rd; — Rem. 24th.

### EXERCISES IN PARSING.

#### Model.

§ 207. " The country abounds in excellent fruit."

The is an article. This title is applied to the definite adjectives a or an, and the.—It is definite, because it indicates some particular object;—and belongs to country. Adjectives belong to the nouns or

pronouns which they qualify or define.

Excellent is an adjective, because it is joined to a noun to qualify or define its meaning;—descriptive, because it expresses some quality of the noun fruit;—in the positive degree, because it expresses to simple state of the quality. Positive, excellent; comparative, more excellent; superlative, most excellent.—It belongs to fruit. Adjectives belong to the nouns or pronouns which they qualify or define.

"Wise men."—" A virtuous life."—" Rural scenery is always interesting."—" Are these things so?"—" The noblest spirits sometimes grow up in the obscurest spheres."—" More agreeable conversation."—" An able statesman."—" The rose is sweet."—" Our highest interests."—" All hope was lost."—" Time is so swift of foot that none can overtake it."—" Modesty is one of the greatest ornaments of youth."—" Our good or bad fortune depends greatly on the choice we make of our friends."

§ 208. "Men grew old in camps, and acquired the highest renown by their warlike achievements, without being once required to face serious danger." — Macaulay. "Any one can conquer his passions

guage, then it follows, that generally we should say, 'the two first' 'the two last,' etc., rather than 'the first two,' the 'last two,' etc. This I say should generally be the order of the words. Yet there are some cases in which it seems preferable to say, 'the first two,' 'the first three,' etc."

VERBS. 153

who calls in the aid of religion." — Crabb. "Every nine days must have its wonder, no matter of what kind."—Irving. "We have the rather availed ourselves of this testimony of a foreign critic in behalf of Shakspeare, because our own countryman, Dr. Johnson, has not been so favorable to him." — Hazlitt. "I made the greater progress." —Franklin. "A century is a period of a hundred years." — "Rectitude in all its branches, is the supreme good." — Channing. "The purest clay is that which burns white." — "The door was red hot." — Dickens. "That mind and body often sympathize, is plain." — Jenyns. "The two last qualities are indeed so common in all the poetry of his nation, that we need scarcely enlarge upon the phrase as belonging peculiarly to him." — J. G. Lockhart. "Without frugality none can be rich; and with it, very few would be poor." — Johnson.

"Man often clouds with vain or fancied ills,
His narrow span, when Nature's stainless light
Dispenses only happiness, and fills
The world with things so beautiful and bright.
Her plains, her mountains, and her valleys teem
With living verdure in the fairest dress;
And ocean, river, lake, and singing stream,
Combine to harmonize her loveliness."—W. C. Lodge.

# Rule IX. - Verbs. - Agreement.

§ 209. A verb must agree with its nominative in number and person; as, "I go;" — "Thou seest;" — "He hears."

False Syntax:—"The singular admixture of serious faults which call for severe criticism, with great merits which excite our warmest admiration, render our task one of unusual perplexity."—Westminster Review. "He was forced to account for it by one of the most absurd, unphilosophical notions that was ever started."—Addison. "They dwelt with a contented fondness on the scenes amidst which they had been born and nurtured with a purity and exulta-

What is the rule respecting the agreement of verbs? Examples. Correct the false syntax, and show why it is false.

tion of feeling which powerfully captivates the heart." - N. A. Review.

"A few brief summer days, and thou

No more amid these haunts shall glide." — Bernard Barton.

"What art thou, speak, that on designs unknown,

While others sleep, thus range the camp alone?"—Pope.

REM. 1. — When a verb is placed between two nominatives of different numbers or persons, it should generally be made to agree with that which precedes it; as, "His meat was locusts and wild honey;"-"Thou art the man." But when the verb is followed by the direct and principal subject, it should be made to agree with the latter nominative; as, "Who art thou?" - "What are we?"

#### COLLECTIVE NOUNS.

REM. 2. — The singular form of a collective noun, may have a verb agreeing with it either in the singular or plural number; as, "The nation is powerful;" - "The assembly were divided in their opinions."

OBS. - No definite rule can be given to decide, in all cases, which number should be employed to agree with a collective noun. When the noun most naturally suggests the idea of unity, the verb should be singular; but when the noun conveys the idea of plurality, the verb should be plural. In modern usage, the plural form is most frequently employed.

Rem. 3. — The transitive verbs need and want are sometimes employed

in a general sense, without a nominative expressed or implied.\*

Examples:—"There needed a new dispensation of religion for the moral reform of society."—Caleb Cushing. "There needs no better picture of his destitute and piteous situation, than that furnished by the homely pen of the chronicler." — Irving. "Wheresoever the case of the opinions came in agitation, there wanted not patrons to stand up to plead for them."—Sparks's Am. Biog.

"Nor did there want,

Cornice or frieze, with bossy sculptures graven." - Milton.

REM. 4. — A verb in the imperative is sometimes used absolutely

What of a verb placed between two nominatives of different numbers or per sons? Examples. What is said respecting the agreement of a verb with & collective noun? Examples. How are we to be governed in deciding which number should be employed to agree with a collective noun?

VERBS. 155

having no direct reference to any particular subject expressed or implied.\*\*

Examples: — "And God said, 'Let there be light;' and there was

light." — Gen. 1: 3.

"' I've lost a day,'—the prince who nobly cried,
Had been an emperor without his crown,—
Of Rome?—say, rather, lord of human race."—Young.

### RULE X. - VERBS. - AGREEMENT.

§ 210. When two or more nominatives denoting different objects are taken conjointly, forming one common subject, the verb agreeing with them should be in the plural number; as, "Socrates and Plato were eminent philosophers;"—"The air, the earth, the water, teem with delighted existence."

False Syntax:—"When the desire of pleasing and willingness to be pleased is silently diminished, the renovation of friendship is hopeless."—Johnson. "The stamp and denomination still continues, but the intrinsic value is frequently lost."—Addison.

Rem. 1.— When two or more nominatives are thus employed, they are generally connected by the conjunction and, expressed or understood.

REM. 2.—A singular nominative and an objective after with, are sometimes made to form the joint subject of a plural verb; as, "Pharaoh with all his host, were drowned in the Red Sea." This copulative use of with is occasionally adopted by good writers; but it would be better, in most cases, either to put and in the place of with or to employ the singular form of the verb.† Thus, instead of saying, "This noble ship with her gallant crew were buried beneath the waves," it would be more correct to say, "This noble ship and her gallant crew were buried beneath the waves." So also, "This brave officer with a company of only fifty

What is the rule respecting the agreement of a verb with two or more nominatives denoting different objects, taken conjointly? Examples. Correct the false syntax, and show why it is false.

son, Hazlitt, and Latham.

"This phraseology, though not strictly consonant with the rules of concord, frequently obtains, both in ancient and modern languages. In some cases indeed it seems preferable to the syntactical form of expression."—

Dr. Crombie.

<sup>\*</sup> See Frazee, Allen and Cornwell, Nutting, Lynde, and Chapin.

<sup>†</sup> The use of a plural verb to agree with a singular nominative and an objective after with, is sanctioned by Priestley, Grant, Milligan, Cobbett, Lewis, Hendrick, Lennie, Hort, Del Mar, and Simmonite; and condemned by G. Brown, Murray, Sanborn, Kirkham, Picket, Hiley, Meilan, Higginson. Hazlitt, and Latham.

men, have succeeded in quelling the insurrection," would be better expressed by saying, "This brave officer, with a company of only fifty men,

has succeeded in quelling the insurrection."

Examples:— "This principle, with others of the same kind, supposes man to act from a brute impulse."—Johnson. "He himself, with others, was taken."—Bancroft. "A body of two thousand men succeeded in surprising the quarters of the marquis of Cadiz, who, with his followers, was exhausted by fatigue and watching."—Prescott.

REM. 3. — When two or more singular nominatives denoting the same object are taken conjointly, the verb agreeing with them must be singular; as, "This renowned patriot and statesman has retired to private life."

### RULE XI. - VERBS. - AGREEMENT.

§ 211. When two or more singular nominatives are so connected that the verb agrees with each subject separately, or with one of them to the exclusion of the others, the verb should be in the singular number.

Examples: — "Duty, and not interest, was his constant rule of action;" — "Nor cloud, nor speck, nor stain, breaks the serene of heaven;" — "Neither Astrology, nor Alchemy deserves the name of a science;" — "In every tribe, superstition, or gratitude, or fortune, has exalted a particular family;" — "Cæsar, as well as Cicero, was remarkable for his eloquence;" — "Thine is the kingdom, and the power, and the glory."

"Every tongue and every eye Does homage to the passer by."

False Syntax:— "Neither romantic fancy, nor extreme pathos, nor sublimity of the very first order, are discoverable in Pope."—Edinburgh Review. "The most trifling occasion, a transient scarcity of flesh or lentils, the neglect of an accustomed salutation, a mistake of precedency in the public baths, or even a religious dispute, were at any time sufficient to kindle a sedition."—Gibbon.

"Danger, long travel, want, or woe, Soon change the form that best we know."—Scott.

When two or more singular nominatives denoting the same object, are taken conjointly, in what number must the verb be? Examples. What is the rule respecting two or more singular nominatives so connected that the verb agrees with each separately, or with one to the exclusion of the others? Examples. Correct the false syntax, and show why it is false.

VERBS. 157

REM. 1.— When a singular and a plural nominative are connected by or or nor, the verb should generally be in the plural; and, when the harmony of the sentence admits of it, the plural nominative should be placed next to the verb; as, "Neither poverty nor riches were injurious to him."

Rem. 2.— When two or more nominatives of different persons are connected by or or nor, the verb is often made to agree with the nearest nominative; as, "Either you or I am in fault." But it would generally be better to express the verb in connection with each nominative, unless the different persons of the verb agree in form; as, "Either you are in fault, or I am."

#### EXERCISES IN COMPOSITION.

§ 212. Write exercises containing a verb that agrees with a singular nominative;—a plural nominative;—a nominative in the first person;—one in the second;—one in the third;—a verb agreeing with a collective noun;—a verb agreeing with two or more nominatives denoting different objects taken conjointly;—several different examples, illustrating Rule 11th;—a verb agreeing with a singular and a plural nominative, connected by or or nor;—a verb agreeing with two or more nominatives of different persons.

#### EXERCISES IN PARSING.

#### Model.

§ 213. "I saw the sun sinking behind the hills."

Saw is a verb, because it expresses an assertion or affirmation; — irregular, because it does not form its past tense and perfect participle by adding d or ed to the present; — see, saw, seen; — it is a transitive verb, in the active voice, because it governs the object sun; — in the indicative mode, because it expresses a declaration; — in the past tense, because it denotes indefinite past time; — in the first person singular, to agree with its nominative I. A verb must agree with its nominative in number and person.

Sinking is a participle, because it is a mode of the verb which partakes of the properties of the verb and the adjective; — sink, sunk, sunk; — imperfect, because it denotes the continuance of the action; — intransitive, because it does not have a noun or pronoun for its object; — and

belongs to sun. Participles relate to nouns or pronouns.

What is the rule respecting a singular and a plural nominative, connected by or or nor? Examples. Respecting two or more nominatives of different persons, connected by or or nor? Examples.

"I will obey."—"He has returned."—"It is lost."—"Strive to improve."—"The multitude pursue pleasure."—"Time and tide wait for no man."—"The intellect, and not the heart is concerned."—"Neither the time nor the place was known."—"The origin of the city and state of Rome is involved in great uncertainty."

§ 214. "In civilized life, where the happiness, and indeed almost the existence of man, depends so much upon the opinion of his fellow men, he is constantly acting a studied part."—Irving. "That great critic and philosopher endeavors to palliate this imperfection in the Greek poet."—Addison. "This, and this alone, constitutes the worth and importance of the sacrifice."—Channing. "A shady grove, a green pasture, a stream of fresh water, are sufficient to attract a colony of sedentary Arabs."—Gibbon. "Africa, as well as Gaul, was gradually fashioned to the imitation of the capital."—Ibid.

"Like the leaves of the forest when summer is green,

That host with their banners, at sunset were seen."—Byron.

"The almost unobserved advancement and diffusion of knowledge were paving the way for discoveries."—Mackintosh. "The iron, as well as the wood, was taken from the wreck of the same ship."—Southey. "It has been frequently observed by writers on physiognomy, that every emotion and every operation of the mind has a corresponding expression of the countenance."—Dugald Stewart.

# RULE XII. - VERBS. - GOVERNMENT.

§ 215. Transitive verbs govern the objective case; as, "I have heard him;"—"Honor thy father and thy mother." See § 124, Rem. 1, Note.

Rem. 1.—A verb in the infinitive, a sentence, or a phrase, often supplies the place of a noun or pronoun in the objective case; as, "You see how few of these men have returned."

REM. 2. — An intransitive verb may be used to govern an objective, when the verb and the noun depending upon it are of kindred signification; as, "To live a blameless life;"—"To run a race."

What is the rule respecting transitive verbs? Examples. What of an intransitive verb followed by a noun of kindred signification? Examples.

159 VERBS.

Obs. — Idiomatic expressions sometimes occur in which intransitive verbs are followed by objectives depending upon them; as, "Perhaps we have wanted the spirit, and manliness, to look the subject fully in the face." -Channing. "They laughed him to scorn."-Matt. 9: 24. "We have stopped a moment to breathe our horses."-Longfellow.

"The broken soldier, kindly bid to stay,

Sat by the fire, and talk'd the night away." - Goldsmith.

REM. 3. — Transitive verbs of asking, giving, teaching, and some. others, are often employed to govern two objectives;\* as, "Ask him his opinion." — "This experience taught me a valuable lesson." - "Spare me yet this bitter cup."-Hemans. "I thrice presented him a kingly crown."—Shakspeare.

REM. 4. — Verbs of asking, giving, teaching, and some others, are often employed in the passive voice to govern a noun or pronoun in the objective.

Examples: - " He was asked his opinion." - Johnson. " The pupil, in more advanced life, is taught the science in its strictly logical form." -N. A. Review. "He was denied admission to the most important public repositories."—Prescott. "He had been refused shelter."—Irving. "They were denied the indulgence."—Macaulay. "They have been denied every ennobling institution."—Channing "Am I to be asked such a question?"—Cooper.

Obs. — This form of expression is anomalous, and might, in many cases, be improved.† Thus, instead of saying, "He was offered a seat

Transitive verbs of asking, teaching, etc.? Examples. How are verbs of asking, teaching, etc., often employed in the passive voice? Examples.

\* Many grammarians supply a preposition to govern one of the objectives following this class of verbs, but such a mode of parsing is, in many cases, arbitrary, and does violence to an important and well established idiom of the language. In the expressions, "Teach them to obey the laws," and "Teach them to obey the laws," and influence of the verb teach upon the pronoun them, is the same in both examples. Why then parse the word them as governed by the verb in one

example, and in the other by a preposition understood?

The rule for the government of two objectives by a verb, without the aid of a preposition, is adopted by Webster, Murray, Alexander, Frazee, Nutting, Perley, Goldsbury, J. M. Putnam, Hamlin, Flower, Crane, Brace, Greenleaf, C. Alexander, Burr, Cornell, Cutler, and many others.

† G. Brown, Sanborn, Murray, Wright, and several other grammarians condemn this usage altogether; while, on the other hand, it has the sanction of a still larger class of authors, including Dr. Crombie, Flower, D'Orsey, Crane, Frazee, R. C. Smith, Emmons, Hamlin, Lennie, Hendrick, Ainsworth, Arnold, and Nutting.

"Examples of the application of this rule are furnished by the best writers. Phrases such as these,—'She was asked the question,' 'She was taught her lesson,' 'They were offered a pardon,' 'They were demed their request,' etc., are of frequent occurrence; and it seems better, after the example of the Latin, to provide for them by a special rule, than to condemn them as inaccuracies."—Pond's Murray.

in the council," it would be preferable to say, "A seat in the council was offered [to] him."

Rem. 5. — The passive voice of a verb is sometimes used in connec-

tion with a preposition, forming a compound passive verb.

Examples:— "He was listened to without a murmur."—A. H. Everett.

"Nor is this enterprise to be scoffed at."—Channing. "This is a tendency to be guarded against."—Paley. "A bitter persecution was carried on."—Hallam.

Rem. 6. — Idiomatic expressions sometimes occur in which a noun in the objective is preceded by a passive verb, and followed by a preposi-

tion used adverbially.

Examples:—"Vocal and instrumental music were made use of."—Addison. "The third, fourth, and fifth, were taken possession of at half past eight."—Southey. "The Pinta was soon lost sight of in the darkness of the night."—Irving. "It ought never to be lost sight of."—N. A. Review.

Obs.—This idiom is anomalous; but it has the sanction of many good writers, and is therefore shielded from the unqualified condemnation of the critic. It would, however, generally be better to avoid it.

Rem. 7.— There are some verbs which may be used either transitively or intransitively; as, "He will return in a few days;" "He will return the book;"—"The wind blows violently;" "The wind blows the chaff."

Rem. 8. — The verb *learn* is often improperly used for *teach*; as, "It is of little utility *to learn* scholars that certain words are signs of certain modes and tenses." Insert *teach* in the place of *learn*.

REM. 9.—The verbs lay and set should not be confounded with lie and sit. Lay is properly transitive; lie, intransitive. Set, is either transitive or intransitive; sit, always intransitive. See the principal parts of these verbs, in the list of irregular verbs, pp. 113, 114.

Correct Examples:—"He fasted and lay in sackcloth."—
1 Kings 21: 27. "He laid his robe from him."—Jonah 3: 6.
"I have sat for hours at my window."—Irving. "Thou hast set a bound that they may not pass over."—Ps. 104: 9. "They have forsaken my law which I set before them."—Jer. 9: 13. "We say, a thing lies by us until we bring it into use; we lay it by for some future purpose; we lie down in order to repose ourselves; we lay money down by way of deposit."—Crabb.

False Syntax: — "My old friend sat himself down in the chair." — Addison. "The mate of a British vessel then laying at anchor in Boston harbor."—Sparks's Am. Biog.

What of the verbs lay and set? Correct the false syntax, and show why it is false.

161 VERBS.

"Even now, where Alpine solitudes ascend, I sit me down a pensive hour to spend."—Goldsmith.

"For him through hostile camps I bend my way, For him thus prostrate at thy feet I lay."—Pope.

REM. 10. - A verb in the infinitive is often preceded by a noun or pronoun in the objective, which has no direct dependence on any other word.\*

Examples: - "One error is that of concluding the things in question to be alike." - Whatsley. "Columbus ordered a strong fortress of wood and plaster to be erected." — Irving. "Its favors here should make us tremble." - Young.

REM. 11. — Idiomatic expressions sometimes occur, in which the active form of a transitive verb is used in a sense nearly allied to the passive; as, "The goods sell rapidly;"—"The cloth tears;"—"Mahogany planes smooth;"—"These lines read well."

REM. 12. — The imperfect participle of a transitive verb is sometimes employed in a passive sense.†

Examples: - "The spot where this new and strange tragedy was acting."—E. Everett. "An attempt is making in the English Parliament to provide by law for the education of the poor."— Daniel Webster.—" The fortress was building." - Irving. fame of the Portuguese discoveries, and of the expeditions fitting out, drew the attention of the world."—Ibid. "We must pass to a rapid notice of the magnificent church, now erecting in the city of New York."— N. A. Review. "While this necessary movement was making."— Cooper. "While these things were transacting in England." - Bancroft.

What peculiar use is sometimes made of the imperfect participle of a transitive verb? Examples.

case." - Nutting.

† Different opinions have long existed among critics respecting this passive use of the imperfect participle. Many respectable writers substitute

the compound passive participle; as, "The house is being built;" "The book is being printed." But the prevailing practice of the best authors is in favor of the simple form; as, "The house is building."

"The propriety of these imperfect passive tenses has been doubted by almost all our grammarians; though I believe but few of them have written many pages without condescending to make use of them. Dr. Beattiestey, "One of the greatest defects of the English torque with record to the year. One of the greatest defects of the English tongue, with regard to the verb, seems to be the want of an imperfect passive participle.' And yet he uses the imperfect participle in a passive sense as often as most writers."—
Pickbourn's Dissertation on the English Verb.

"Several other expressions of this sort now and then occur, such as the

<sup>\*&</sup>quot;The infinitive has somemties a subject in the objective case; as, "I believe him to be an honest man;"—'He commanded the horse to be saddled;"—'I confess myself to be in fault;"—'Let him be punished.' Him, in the first sentence quoted, is not the object of the verb believe, but the subject of to be. In the second sentence, horse is not the object of command; it is not meant that a command was given to the horse." — Butler.
"The agent to a verb in the infinitive mode must be in the objective

162

Rem. 13.— When the objective has the same form as the nominative, it should generally follow the verb that governs it; but when the objective differs in form from the nominative, it may either precede or follow the governing verb; as, "Cæsar conquered the Britons;"—"We have seen him;"—"Whom, therefore, ye ignorantly worship, him declare I unto you."

SYNTAX.

## RULE XIII. - SAME CASE.

§ 216. Intransitive and passive verbs have the same case after them as before them, when both words refer to the same person or thing; as, "Society is the true sphere of human virtue;"—"They wished him to be their king;"—"He soon became the leader of his party;"—"He was chosen librarian;"—"Homer has been styled the prince of poets."

Rem. — In some instances the words so agreeing in case are both placed either before or after the verb; as, "Are they friends?" — "Friends they cannot be."

## RULE XIV. — GOVERNMENT OF THE INFINITIVE.

§ 217. The infinitive mode may be governed by a verb, a noun, or an adjective; \* as, "Strive to improve;"—"I am in haste to return;"—"The ship was ready to sail."

REM. 1.— The infinitive is often governed by than or as. The following are examples:— "An object so high as to be invisible;"

What is the rule respecting the same case? Examples. Respecting the government of the infinitive? Examples. What conjunctions are frequently employed to govern the infinitive? Examples.

\* Several respectable grammarians treat the infinitive particle to as a preposition, governing the verb. See Comly, G. Brown, Bell, Snyder, and Fowle.

"If to is here a preposition, it differs at least in one respect, from every other English preposition, and from the same word in other situations, in giving entire generality to the verb,—an effect which no preposition, as such, ever has, either on the verb, or any other part of speech. That it should assume this peculiarity in this particular connection only, is remarkable; and that it should do this and at the same time retain the usual properties of a preposition, seems very improbable."—Everest.

new-fangled and most uncouth solecism, 'is being done,' for the good old English idiomatic expression 'is doing,'—an absurd periphrasis, driving out a pointed and pithy turn of the English language."—N. A. Review.

163 TENSES.

- "It is sometimes better to submit to injustice, than to resort to judicial proceedings."

REM. 2. — The infinitive is sometimes governed by an adverb; as, "The shipmen were about to flee."

REM. 3. — The infinitive is sometimes governed by a phrase or a sentence; as, " Too needy ever to have leisure for attempting to execute any great and worthy design." - Southey.

"In age, in infancy, from others' aid Is all our hope, to teach us to be kind." - Young.

REM. 4. — The infinitive is sometimes used absolutely, having no dependence on any other word; as, "It was, so to speak, a branch of the Executive Power." - N. Y. Review.

REM. 5. — A verb in the infinitive usually relates to some noun or pronoun.\* Thus, in the sentence, "He desires to improve," the verb to improve relates to the pronoun he while it is governed by desires.

REM. 6. — When the infinitive follows the active voice of the verbs bid, dare, feel, see, let, make, need, and hear, the sign to is usually omitted; as, "I felt my strength return;" - "Nothing need be said;" - "We heard the thunder roll;" - " Pride guides his steps, and bids him shun the great."

REM. 7. — The sign of the infinitive is also omitted, in some instances, after the verbs have, behold, perceive, know, and help; as, "Would they have

us reject such an offer ?"

## RULE XV. — TENSES.

§ 218. In the use of verbs, those tenses should be employed which express correctly the sense intended.

What of infinitives having no dependence on other words? Examples. what do infinitives relate? Examples After what verbs is the sign of the infinitive usually omitted? Examples. Give the rule for the employment of the tenses. Illustrate its application.

"An infinitive refers to the noun which is the agent or subject of the action expressed by the infinitive. The reference is precisely of the same nature as that of a participle to its substantive, or of a finite verb to its nominative."—Parkhurst.

<sup>\*</sup>Some teachers pay little attention to the government of the infinitive, while they direct their pupils to point out in all cases the noun or pronoun to which it relates. Others require their pupils to designate both government and relation. See Sanborn's Grammar, p. 144.

164 VERBS.

Rem. 1. — This rule is somewhat indefinite, but when taken in connection with the definitions and illustrations of the tenses given under Etymology, it will, in most cases, be a sufficient guide to the learner. It is violated in the following example: — "I expected to have seen you." The verb to have seen cannot here relate to a time prior to that denoted by the verb expected. It should not therefore be in the past perfect tense. Corrected: — "I expected to see you."

False Syntax:— "When I was in France, I have often observed, that a great man has grown so insensibly heated by the court which was paid him on all sides, that he has been quite distracted."—Steele. "Columbus had fondly hoped, at one time, to have rendered the natives civilized, industrious, and tributary subjects of the crown."—Irving. "As Dr. Wallis hath long ago observed."—Lowth. "They continue with me now three days."—Matt. 15:32.

Rem. 2.— The present tense is often employed in expressions that relate to the future; as, "The world to come;"—" He leaves in half an hour;"—"I am about to write."

Obs. — When a finite verb in the present tense, occurs in a sentence denoting futurity, it is generally preceded by before, as soon as, when, till, or after; or accompanied by an adverb or modifying phrase denoting future time; as, "When the mail arrives, the letters will be delivered;"—"Hold you the watch to-night?" "We do my lord;"—"Ring the bell, at a quarter before eight."

REM. 3.—When the infinitive present is connected with another verb, it generally relates to the same time as the verb with which it is joined; as, "He began to write;"—"He will begin to write." In the first of these examples to write corresponds in time with began, and is therefore past in respect to the time of speaking. In the other example, it relates to the same time that is expressed by will begin.

Obs. — Sometimes, however, the infinitive denotes time subsequent to that expressed by the verb with which it is connected; as, "He is to engage in teaching;"—"Æneas went in search of an empire which was one day to command the world."

Rem. 4. — In animated narrations, the present tense is occasionally used for the past; as, " After the lapse of eight precious days, they again

Correct the fulse syntax, and show why it is false. Give examples of verbs in the present tense, used in expressions that relate to the future. What of the infinitive present, used in connection with other verbs? Illustrate.

165 TENSES.

weigh anchor; the coast of England recedes; already they are unfurling their sails on the broad ocean, when the captain of the Speedwell, with his company, dismayed at the dangers of the enterprize, once more pretends that his ship is too weak for the service." — Bancroft.

REM. 5. - The future tense is frequently employed for the future perfect; as, "I shall finish my letter before the mail closes."

REM. 6. — When a verb in the present perfect tense is preceded by before, as soon as, when, till, or after, it usually performs the office of the future perfect; as, "When he has finished his engagement, he shall be rewarded."

REM. 7.— The hypothetical form of the verb to be is used to express either present or indefinite time; as, "If he were present, he would convince you of your error." See p. 101.

OBS. - The past subjunctive of other verbs is often, employed in a similar manner; as, "If he regarded his own interest, he would be more faithful to his employer."

REM. 8. — The past perfect subjunctive is often employed to express indefinite past time; as, "I should have walked out if it had not rained."

REM. 9. - In expressing general propositions which have no direct relation to time, the present tense of the verb should be employed; as, "The passion for power and superiority is universal."— Channing.

REM. 10. — The perfect participle of an irregular verb should not be used for the past tense, nor the past tense for the perfect participle. The following expressions are therefore incorrect: - "The storm begun to subside;"—"I done it in great haste;"—"He was displeased to receive a letter wrote with so little care." Corrected: - "The storm began to subside;" - "I did it in great haste;" -"He was displeased to receive a letter written with so little care." This rule is also violated when the past tense of an irregular verb is used with an auxiliary. Thus, instead of saying "The sun has rose," we should say, "The sun has risen."

False Syntax: - "We are not condemned to toil through half a folio, to be convinced that the writer has broke his promise." -Johnson. "The champions having just began their career, the king stopped the combat." - Goldsmith.

"Rapt into future times, the bard begun." - Pope.

What tense is employed in general propositions, having no direct relation to time? Examples. What is said respecting the use of the perfect participle and the past tense of an irregular verb? Illustrate. Correct the false syntax, and show why it is false.

### RULE XVI. - PARTICIPLES.

- § 219. Participles relate to nouns or pronouns; as, "He stood *leaning* on his spade, and *gazing* at the brightness in the west."
- REM. 1. When the participle is preceded by the negative particle un, it becomes an adjective, unless the verb from which it is formed admits the same prefix. The words untiring, unsought, unseen, and unknown, are examples of this class of adjectives. But the words unbinding, unfolded, undone, etc., when used in the verbal sense, are to be regarded as participles, since they are formed regularly from the verbs unbind, unfold, undo, etc.
- REM. 2. Participles are often used in the sense of nouns; as, "There was again the *smacking* of whips, the *clattering* of hoofs, and the *glittering* of harness." *Irving*.
- Rem. 3. Participles often perform, at the same time, the office of a noun and a verb; as, "I could not avoid expressing my concern for the stranger." As a noun, expressing is in the objective case and governed by avoid. As a transitive verb, it governs the word concern.
- Rem. 4.—A participle is sometimes used absolutely, having no dependence on any other word; as, "Properly speaking, there is no such thing as chance;"—"This conduct, viewing it in the most favorable light, reflects discredit on his character."

Rem. 5.—A participle sometimes relates to a sentence or phrase; as, "He had been strictly secured and guarded, owing to his former escape."
—Walter Scott.

"To do aught good never will be our task, But ever to do ill our sole delight, As being the contrary to his high will Whom we resist."—Milton.

Rem. 6. — There are certain adjectives which are derived directly from verbs, and supply the place of passive participles. Their use is mostly confined to poetry.

Examples: — "Regions consecrate to oldest time." — Wordsworth.
"'T is dedicate to ruin." — Coleridge.

Give the rule for the agreement of participles. Examples. Participles preceded by the negative particle un. Examples of each class. Give examples of participial nouns. What double office do participles often perform? Examples. Give examples of participles used absolutely.

167 VERBS.

"To save himself and household from amidst A world devote to universal wreck."-Milton. [For one of the uses of the imperfect participle, see Rule 12, Rem. 12.]

#### EXERCISES IN COMPOSITION.

§ 220. Write exercises containing objectives governed by transitive verbs; - intransitive verbs governing objectives of kindred signification; - verbs having the same case after them as before them; - verbs in the infinitive governed by verbs, nouns, and adjectives; - verbs in the infinitive used without the sign to; - imperfect and perfect participles; - participial nouns.

### EXERCISES IN PARSING.

§ 221. "Evil communications corrupt good manners." — "Thy name shall be Abraham." — "He shall be called John." — "I heard him relate the anecdote." - "I have written exercises, containing all the examples required." - "Conversation enriches the understanding, but solitude is the school of genius."—Gibbon. "Napoleon was never known to change his opinion on any subject."-Alison. "The Puritans were men whose minds had derived a peculiar character from the daily contemplation of superior beings and eternal interests."-Macaulay.

§ 222. "The daily press first instructed men in their wants, and soon found that the eagerness of curiosity outstripped the power of gratifying it."-Story. "He that teaches us any thing which we knew not before, is undoubtedly to be reverenced as a master."— Johnson. "This universal pacification has hardly been thought of." -Channing. "It formed so important and singular a feature of their social economy, as to merit a much more particular notice than it has received."-Prescott. "He was offered an employment."-Campbell. "He lay like a warrior taking his rest."-Wolfe. "In the beginning they may be assailed by the clamor of self-interest. and frowned upon by the worshippers of expediency."-N. A. Review. "Many approximations have been made, and are now making, to the truth."-Lockhart. "We make provision for this life, as though it were never to have an end; and for the other life, as though it were never to have a beginning."-Addison. "The desire

that our country should surpass all others, would not be criminal, did we understand in what respects it is most honorable for a nation to excel."—Channing. "To keep always praying aloud is plainly impossible."—G. Brown.

## RULE XVII.—ADVERBS.

§ 223. Adverbs modify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs; as, "Men frequently contend for trifles;"—
"It was very thankfully received."

Rem. 1. — An adverb is frequently used to modify a sentence or phrase.\*

Examples:—"Which is so at wart with nature."—Prof. Haddock.

"The final debate on the resolution was postponed for nearly a month."—Wirt. "They introduced the Deity to human apprehension, under an idea more personal, more determinate, more within its compass."—Paley. "The other productions of this indefatigable scholar, embrace a large circle of topics independently of his various treatises on philology and criticism."—Prescott. "Verily I say unto you, they have their reward."—Matt. 6: 2.

Rem. 2.—An adverb is sometimes used to modify a preposition;‡ as, "He sailed nearly round the globe;"—"He was wounded just below the ear."

REM. 3. — Adjectives should be employed to qualify nouns and pronouns, and adverbs to modify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs. It is therefore incorrect to say, "She writes elegant." "Thine often infirmities."

Obs. — There are, however, certain forms of expression in which adverbs bear a special relation to nouns or pronouns;  $\parallel$  as, "Behold, I,

Give the rule for adverbs. Examples. What are adverbs frequently used to modify, besides verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs? Examples. What distinction should be observed in the use of adjectives and adverbs? Illustrate.

<sup>\* &</sup>quot;The adverb does not always belong to any one single word; nothing being more common than the relation of an adverb to a clause, all of whose words are taken as one word; and almost or quite as frequently, an adverb stands in relation to a whole sentence."—Smart.

<sup>† &</sup>quot;Sometimes a preposition and a noun together have the signification of an adjective; and, as such, the phrase may be qualified by an adverb; as, doubly in fault,—doubly criminal."—Parkhurst.

<sup>‡</sup> See Sanborn, Parkhurst, J. M. Putnam, Wilbur, Brace, Emmons, Goldsbury, and Goodenow.

<sup>||</sup> See Bullions, Allen and Cornwell, Brace, Butler, Badgley, and Webber.

even I, do bring a flood of waters."—Gen. 6: 17. "For our gospel came not unto you in word only, but also in power."—1 Thess. 1: 5.

Rem. 4.— The adverbs yea, yes, nay, no, and amen, are generally used independently; as, "Will you go?" "No."—"Has the hour arrived?" "Yes."

Rem. 5.— Never is sometimes improperly used for ever; as, "They might be extirpated, were they never so many." Corrected:— "They might be extirpated, were they ever so many."

Rem. 6.—The adverbs hither, thither, and whither, are now seldom employed except in grave discourse, their places being supplied, in common writings, by here, there, and where; as, "It was dangerous to go there."—Irving. "Traders flocked there as to a fair."—Prescott. "Without knowing where to go."—Paley. "When you come here."—Willis.

REM. 7. — Adverbs are sometimes used to supply the place of nouns.

Examples: — "Till now they had paid no taxes." — A. H. Everett.

"On the following day Columbus came to where the coast swept away to the northeast for many leagues."—Irving. "Save where the beetle wheels his droning flight."—Gray. "Till then who knew the force of those dire arms?"—Milton. "The several sources from whence these pleasures are derived."—Addison. "From hence I was conducted up a staircase."—Irving.

Obs. — At once, and by far, are in general use; and the adverbial phrases from hence, from thence, from whence, constitute an authorized idiom. But such expressions as from where, from there, to here, are seldom employed by the best prose writers. In poetry, their occurrence is more frequent.

REM. 8. — Where, an adverb of place, is sometimes improperly employed without reference to place, for the phrase in which; as, "They framed a protestation, where [in which] they repeated all their former claims."

Rem. 9.— The adverb there is often used for the sake of euphony, without any reference to place; as, "There is an hour of peaceful rest."—W. B. Tappan. "There came to the beach a poor exile of Erin."—Campbell. When used in this sense, there is called an expletive adverb.

REM. 10. — The word all is frequently used as an adverb, in the sense of wholly; as,

"Yet our great enemy, All incorruptible, would on his throne Sit unpolluted."—Milton.

What of the adverbs yea, yes, nay, no, and amen? Examples. What part of speech are adverbs sometimes used to represent? Examples. Which of the different forms of expression named are authorized, and which are objectionable?

170 SYNTAX.

Rem. 11. — A negation is properly expressed by the use of one negative only. The following sentence is therefore erroneous:—

"I never did repent for doing good, Nor shall not now."—Shakspeare.

Obs. 1.—Two negatives in the same clause are generally equivalent to an affirmative, and are sometimes elegantly employed to express a positive assertion; as, "The pilot was not unacquainted with the coast;"—"Nor did he pass unmoved the gentle scene."

" Nor did they not perceive the evil plight

In which they were, or the fierce pain not feel."—Milton.

The intervention of only, or some other word of kindred meaning, preserves the negation; as, "He was not only illiberal, but covetous."

Obs. 2.—A repetition of the same negative renders the negation more emphatic; as, "I would never lay down my arms;—never—never—never."—Pitt.

Rem. 12.— The adverb no is sometimes improperly used for not; as, "Whether he will or no, he must be a man of the nineteenth century."—Macaulay.

REM. 13. — Two or more words are sometimes used in connection, as a compound adverb, or adverbial phrase.

Examples:—"We will see about this matter by and by."—Irving.
"Ishmael went forth to meet them, weeping all along as he went."
—Jer. 41: 6. "If we hope for what we are not likely to possess, we act and think in vain."—Addison.

Rem. 14. — Adverbs should be placed in that situation which contributes most to the harmony and clearness of the sentence, and which accords best with the usage of the language. This rule is violated in the sentence, "Thoughts are only criminal, when they are first chosen and then voluntarily continued." As it stands, the adverb only properly qualifies criminal, whereas the author intended to have it qualify that portion of the sentence which follows the comma. Corrected: — "Thoughts are criminal, only when they are first chosen and then voluntarily continued."

False Syntax:—"In following the trail of his enemies through the forest, the American Indian exhibits a degree of sagacity, which almost appears miraculous."—Alison. "There are certain miseries in idleness, which the idle can only conceive."—Johnson. "It not only has form but life."—N. A. Review.

How is a negation properly expressed? Give examples of the violation of this rule. What is an adverbial phrase? Examples. What rule should be observed respecting the position of adverbs? Illustrate. Correct the false syntax, and show why it is false.

Obs. 1.—An adverb should not be placed immediately after the infinitive particle to.\* This rule is violated in the following sentence:—"Teach scholars to carefully scrutinize the sentiments advanced in all the books they read."

False Syntax: — "To make this sentence perspicuous it would be necessary to entirely remodel it." — Newman's Rhetoric. "It costs the pupil more to simply state the examples in such a form, than it does to perform them without any statement at all." —N. A. Review.

Obs. 2.—The adverb enough is placed after the adjective which it modifies, and both the adjective and the adverb are placed after the noun; as, "A house large enough for all."

Rem. 15.— The words howsoever, which soever, and what soever, are sometimes divided by the intervention of another word; as, "But surely this division, how long soever it has been received, is inadequate and fallacious."—Johnson. "By what manner soever."— Wayland.

## RULE XVIII. CONJUNCTIONS.

§ 224. Conjunctions connect words or sentences; as, "Idleness and Ignorance are the parents of many vices;"—"He fled because he was afraid."

REM. 1. — Relative pronouns and conjunctive adverbs are also employed to perform the office of connectives.

Obs. 1.—In the compound sentence, "He who expects much, will often be disappointed," the relative who is the subject of the verb expects in one clause, and relates to the pronoun he, which is the subject of will be disappointed in the other clause. The connection expressed by who in this example, and by relative pronouns generally, is quite as close as that expressed by conjunctions. See § 116, Rem. 2.

Obs. 2. — Many conjunctive adverbs modify the two verbs embraced in the different clauses which they connect; as, "When he

What of the position of adverbs modifying infinitives? Correct the false syntax, and show why it is false. Give the rule respecting conjunctions. Examples. What other classes of words are also employed as connectives? Illustrate the connective office of a relative pronoun. Two-fold modifying power of many conjunctive adverbs. Examples.

<sup>\*</sup> See Davis, Parkhurst, Perley, and Kennion.

had delivered his message he departed;"—" Fame may give praise, while it withholds esteem."

- OBS. 3.—A conjunctive adverb used to supply the place of a preposition and a relative pronoun, is called a relative adverb; as, "The shepherd leaves his mossy cottage, where [in which] he dwells in peace;"—"The colonies had now reached that stage in their growth, when the difficult problem of colonial government must be solved."
- Rem. 2. There are certain idiomatic forms of expression in which the connection between different clauses is implied in the relation which they bear to each other in sense; as, "In this last case, the more apt and striking is the analogy suggested, the more will it have of an artificial appearance." Whately. "Whatever was his predominant inclination, neither hope nor fear hindered him from complying with it." Johnson. "Sad as his story is, it is not altogether mournful." Southey.
- Rem. 3.— The conjunction that often performs the office of a pronoun or substitute. Thus, in the sentence, "I know that he will return," that represents the clause he will return, and is the object of the transitive verb know. See Rem. 11.
- Obs. 1. The conjunction that is often suppressed when the connection of the different clauses is obvious; as, "But Brutus says he was ambitious."—Shakspeare.
- Obs. 2.— When, however, the connection of the clauses is less intimate, the omission of *that* is objectionable; as, "His ingenuity was such [that] he could form letters, make types and wood cuts, and engrave vignettes in copper."— Bancroft.
- Rem. 4. Two or more words are sometimes used together as a compound conjunction or conjunctive phrase.
  - Examples:—"It has been observed that happiness, as well as virtue, consists in mediocrity."—Johnson. "The writer, by whom the noble features of our scenery shall be sketched with a glowing pencil, and the peculiarities of our character seized with delicate perception, cannot mount so entirely and rapidly to success, but that ten years will add new millions to the number of his readers."—E. Everett.

Obs. — Many expressions of this class are elliptical; but it is generally better not to attempt to supply the words omitted, unless they are obviously implied.

## CORRESPONDING CONJUNCTIONS.

Rem. 5. — Some conjunctions are composed of two corresponding words. The following list embraces most of this class of connectives, and exhibits the correct mode of employing them:—

What is a relative adverb? Examples. Compound conjunctions. Examples. Corresponding conjunctions.

Both — and: "It is the work of a mind fitted both for minute researches and for large speculations." — Macaulay.

Though, although—yet, still, nevertheless: "Though deep, yet clear, though gentle, yet not dull;"—"Though a thousand rivers discharge themselves into the ocean, still it is never full."

Whether - or: " Whether it were I or they."

Either - or: "No leave ask'st thou of either wind or tide."

Neither - nor: "Neither act nor promise hastily."

Obs. — The poets frequently use or — or for either — or, and nor — nor for neither — nor; as,

"Not to be tempted from her tender task,

Or [either] by sharp hunger, or by smooth delight." - Thomson.

"Nor [neither] eye nor listening ear an object finds." - Young.

Rem. 6.—Some conjunctions are used in correspondence with adverbs or adjectives. The following are the principle connectives of this class:—

As — as, so: "She is as amiable as her sister;"—"As he excels in virtue, so he rises in estimation."

So — as: "No riches make one so happy as a clear conscience."

— "Speak so as to be understood."

So — that, expressing a consequence: "She speaks so low that no one can hear what she is saying."

Not only — but, but also: "He was not only prudent, but also industrious."

Such — as: "There never was such a time as the present."

Such — that: "Such is the emptiness of human enjoyment, that we are always impatient of the present."

More, sooner, etc.—than: "They have more than heart could wish;"—"The Greeks were braver than the Persians."

OBS.— Than should be used to correspond with rather and with all comparatives; as, "Receive knowledge rather than choice gold;"

What conjunction is used to correspond with both? Give an example. [The teacher should proceed in a similar manner through the list of corresponding conjunctions, and repeat the exercise till the pupils are able to distinguish readily the terms which properly correspond with each other. What words are employed by the poets to correspond with or and nor? Examples. With what words does than properly correspond? Examples.

-"Wisdom is better than rubies." The clause following other \* is also more properly introduced by than, though good writers occasionally employ some other term.

REM. 7. — The negatives no, not, etc., may be followed by either or or nor. The use of nor serves to repeat the negation; and there are many

cases in which it is decidedly preferable to or.†

Examples:—"There are no more continents or worlds to be revealed."—E. Everett. "It is not by accuracy or profundity, that men become masters of great assemblies."—Macaulay. "I know not where to begin, nor where to end."—E. Everett. "He never convinces the reason, nor fills the imagination, nor touches the heart."—Macaulay. "Let not your fancy, nor your excited feelings lead you captive."—B. B. Edwards. "The exiles of New England saw not before them either a home or a country."—Story.

Rem. 8.—The conjunction as, used in connection with an adjective or adverbin the positive degree, is sometimes improperly coupled with a comparative, and followed by than; as, "The latest posterity will listen with as much, or even greater pleasure than their contemporaries."—A. H. Everett. Corrected:—"The latest posterity will listen with as much pleasure as their contemporaries, or even greater."

Correct Example: — "I am as well as you have ever known me in a time of much trouble, and even better." — Cowper.

False Syntax:—"A vision came before him, as constant and more terrible than that from which he had escaped."—Dickens. "I have proceeded in the revisal, as far, and somewhat farther than the fifteenth book."—Cowper.

Rem. 9.— The conjunction or is sometimes employed to connect words that are in apposition; as, "No disease of the mind can more fatally disable it from benevolence, than ill-humor or peevishness." Peevishness is not here a distinct thing from ill-humor, but merely another term for the same idea.

Rem. 10. — The word as has a variety of uses, some of which deserve particular notice. It is employed, —

1. In connection with certain prepositions; as, "It would have

Improper use of than to correspond with as. Correct the false syntax and show why it is false. What peculiar office does or sometimes perform? Illustrate. What peculiar uses of as are mentioned? Give examples of each kind.

<sup>\*&</sup>quot;In the book of Common Prayer, we have, 'Thou shalt have no other Gods but me;' and the same expression occurs in Addison, Swift, and other contemporary writers. Usage, however, seems of late to have decided almost universally in favor of than."—Dr. Crombie.

<sup>†</sup> See Burns's Grammar.

been idle for the philosopher to form conjectures, as to the direction which the kindling genius of the age was to assume."

— E. Everett. "As for the rest of those who have written against me, they deserve not the least notice." — Dryden.

- To connect nouns and pronouns which are in apposition; as
   "Nor ought we, as\* citizens, to acquiesce in an injurious act."
   Channing. See also Rule 2, Rem. 7.
- 3. To connect adjectives and participles with the nouns or pronouns to which they belong; as, "The infantry was regarded as comparatively worthless." Macaulay. "Their presence was of great moment, as giving consideration to the enterprise." Prescott.

Rem. 11.— The conjunction that is often employed to introduce a sentence or clause, which is used as a noun in the nominative or objective case; as, "That the idea of glory should be associated strongly with military exploits, ought not to be wondered at." — Channing.

Rem. 12. — The conjunction so is occasionally used in the sense of if, or provided that; as, "It signifies little whether it be very well executed or not, so it be reasonably well done, and without any glaring omissions or errors." — Brougham.

Rem. 13. — The word than was formerly employed as a preposition, and still retains this character in the phrase than whom; † as, "There sat a patriot sage, than whom the English language does not possess a better writer." — E. Everett.

"Which, when Beëlzebub perceived, than whom, Satan except, none higher sat, with grave Aspect he rose."—Milton.

"Felon unwhipp'd! than whom in yonder cells

Full many a groaning wretch less guilty dwells." — Spraque.

Obs. — The phrase than which is also sometimes used in a similar manner; as, "A work, than which the age has certainly produced none more sure of bequeathing its author's name to the admiration of future times." — J. G. Palfrey.

REM. 14. — The word both should not be used with reference to more than two objects or classes of objects. The following example is therefore erroneous: —"He paid his contributions to literary undertakings, and assisted both the Tatler, Spectator, and Guardian." — Johnson. Both should be omitted.

What care should be observed in the use of the word both? Illustrate.

<sup>\*</sup>Several respectable grammarians entertain the opinion that as in this and similar examples is a preposition, governing the following noun. See Fuller, J. M. Putnam, Sanborn, Cobb, and Emmons.

<sup>† &</sup>quot;The comparative agreeth to the parts compared, by adding this preposition, than." — Ben Johnson; London, 1640. (See also Crombie, Priestley, Wm. Ward, Bicknell, Meilan, and Lindsay.)

REM. 15. — The conjunctions than and as are frequently followed by an ellipsis of one or more words required to complete the construction; as, "More than one [ ] of his plays are devoted exclusively to its illustration." — Prescott. "He was the father of all such as [ ] handle the harp and organ." — Gen. 4:21.

Obs. — Examples sometimes occur in which it is impossible to supply the ellipsis satisfactorily, while the sense is clearly conveyed by the expression in its abridged form. In parsing such examples, it would be better for the pupil to refer to the foregoing remark, and not attempt to supply words which are altogether rejected by the idiom of the language. Thus, in the first example above, the word one may be parsed as the subject of a verb understood, without naming any particular word to complete the construction. But in the second example, the ellipsis is more readily supplied. "He was the father of all such as [those who] handle the harp and organ." In parsing examples of this class, it is better to supply the ellipsis. See § 293.

#### RULE XIX. - PREPOSITIONS - RELATION.

§ 225. Prepositions connect words and show the relation between them.

Rem. 1. — In parsing a preposition, both terms of the relation expressed by it should be pointed out. One of these terms is always the object of 'the preposition; the other may be a verb, an adjective, a noun, or an adverb. In the sentence, "He travelled for pleasure," for shows the relation between pleasure and the verb travelled. In the sentence, "They were destitute of food," of shows the relation between food and the adjective destitute. In the sentence, "This is an age of improvement," of shows the relation between improvement and the noun age. In the sentence, "Ambassadors were sent previously to the declaration," to shows the relation between declaration and the adverb previously.

Obs. — There are certain elliptical forms of speech in which the antecedent term of relation is omitted; as,

"O for the voice and fire of seraphim,
To sing thy glories with devotion due!" — Beattie.

Rem 2.—A preposition and its object should be so placed as to leave no ambiguity in regard to the words which the preposition is intended to connect. The following sentence is faulty in this res-

By what are the conjunctions than and as frequently followed? Examples. Give the rule for the relation expressed by prepositions. Illustrate. What rule is given respecting the position of a preposition and its object?

pect: - "The message was communicated by an agent, who had never before discharged any important office of trust, in compliance with the instructions of the executive." In is here intended to show the relation between was communicated and compliance; whereas the present arrangement indicates that it expresses the relation between had discharged and compliance. Corrected :- "The message was communicated in compliance with the instructions of the executive, by an agent who had never before discharged any important office of trust."

REM. 3. - The use of two prepositions before a single noun, though inelegant, often contributes to perspicuity and brevity, and has the sanc-

tion of many good writers.

Examples: — "Men's passions and interests mix with, and are expressed in, the decisions of the intellect." — Channing. "They were never revealed to, nor confronted with, the prisoner." — Prescott.

"We have never uttered a word in this Journal, either in advocacy of, or in opposition to, any particular religious sect, or political party amongst us." — Horace Mann.

Obs. — The same remark applies also to the use both of a preposition and a transitive verb before a single object.

Examples: — "It was created to influence, and not solely to be influenced by, the opinions of the community." — N. A. Review. "And may readily associate with, and promote either." — Dr. Hopkins. "We are so made as to be capable, not only of *perceiving*, but also of being pleased with, or pained by, the various objects by which we are surrounded."—Wayland.

REM. 4. — Two or more words are sometimes used together as a compound preposition; as, "From between the arcades, the eye glances up to a bit of blue sky, or a passing cloud." - Irving. "Over against this church stands a large hospital." — Addison.

REM. 5. — Care should be taken to employ such prepositions as express clearly and precisely the relations intended.

Correct Examples: - "He went to New York;" - "He arrived at Liverpool;"-" He rode into the country;"-" He resides in London;"-" He walks with a staff by moonlight;"-" The mind is sure to revolt from the humiliation of being thus moulded and fashioned, in respect to its feelings, at the pleasure of another."-Whately.

False Syntax: - "We differ entirely with Lord Brougham." -N. Y. Review. "The posthumous volumes appeared in considerable

Illustrate. Give examples of compound prepositions. What care should be observed in the choice of prepositions? Correct the false syntax, and show why it is false.

178

SYNTAX.

intervals." — Hallam. "It was not evident what deity or what form of worship they had substituted to the gods and temples of antiquity." - Gibbon.

## RULE XX. - PREPOSITIONS. - GOVERNMENT.

§ 226. Prepositions govern the objective case; as, "They came to us in the spirit of kindness;" - "From him that is needy, turn not away."

Rem. 1.— A preposition should never be introduced to govern a word which is properly the object of a transitive verb. Thus, instead of saying, "We delight to contemplate on the wonders of creation," we should say, "We delight to contemplate the wonders of creation."

REM. 2. — Respecting the ellipsis of prepositions, no definite rule can be given. Care should be taken to conform to the usage of good writers. In the following sentence the preposition is improperly omitted:—
"Chemistry and Botany will be studied the Spring term."—Corrected:— "Chemistry and Botany will be studied during the Spring term." The following is also objectionable: - "It is worthy the consideration of all." - N. A. Review. Of should be inserted after worthy. See § 293.

REM. 3. — A noun or pronoun following like, unlike, near, or nigh, is often governed by a preposition understood; \* as "Solomon, in all his glory, was not arrayed like [to] one of these;"-" The house stands near [to] a river."

REM. 4. — The word save is frequently used to perform the office of a preposition; as,

"And all desisted, all save him alone." - Wordsworth.

Rem. 5. — But† is sometimes employed as a preposition, in the sense

What do prepositions govern? Examples. Nouns and pronouns following the words like, unlike, and nigh. Examples. The word save. Examples.

\*\* Like, unlike, near and nigh, are classed by some grammarians with prepositions.

because they are sometimes *compared*; (2.) because they sometimes have adverbs evidently relating to them; (3.) because the preposition to or unto is sometimes expressed after them; and, (4.) because the words which usually stand for them in the learned languages, are clearly adjectives." - G. Brown.

† The use of but as a preposition is discountenanced by G. Brown, Sanborn, Murray, S. Oliver, and several other grammarians. See also an able article in the Massachusetts Common School Journal, vol. ii., p. 19.

The use of but as a preposition is approved by J. E. Worcester, John Walker, R. C. Smith, Pickett, Hiley, Angus, Lynde, Hull, Powers, Spear, Farnum, Fowle, Goldsbury, Perley, Cobb, Badgley, Cooper, Jones, Davis, Beall, Hendrick, Hazen, Goodenow, and other authors.

"It is a preposition where we say, 'I saw no one but him;' yet we may by an ellipsis still explain it as a conjunction,—'I saw no one but [I saw] him;'—or, by another ellipsis, as an adverb,—'I saw no one [I saw] but him, that is, only 'him.' The simplest explanation, or that which dispenses with the contrived ellipsis, is the best." - Smart.

of except; as, "No one can appreciate the beauty and majesty of the heavens, but him who has been shut out from every other prospect for days and weeks together." — Graham's Magazine.

"The boy stood on the burning deck,
Whence all but him had fled."—Hemans.

Rem. 6.—"O'clock" is an elliptical expression, contracted from "Of the clock."\*

## Rule XXI. - Interjections.

§ 227. Interjections have no grammatical relation to the other words of a sentence; as, "These were delightful days; but, alas! they are no more."

#### EXERCISES IN COMPOSITION.

§ 228. Write exercises containing examples of adverbs; — conjunctions; — conjunctive adverbs modifying verbs in two different clauses; — a relative adverb; — several examples of corresponding conjunctions; — examples of prepositions and interjections.

## EXERCISES IN PARSING.

## Model.

§ 229. "He came in haste, and soon returned."

In is a preposition, expressing the relation of the noun haste to the verb came. Prepositions connect words and show the relation between them.

And is a conjunction, connecting the two clauses. He came and [he] returned. Conjunctions connect words or sentences.

Soon is an adverb, modifying the sense of the verb returned. Adverbs modify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs.

"He is very cautious."—"Health and plenty cheer the laboring swain."—"The weakest kind of fruit drops soonest to the ground."—Shakspeare. "If men see our faults, they will talk among themselves, though we refuse to let them talk to us."—"War is to be ranked among the most dreadful calamities which fall on a guilty world."—Channing.

"O Solitude! where are the charms
That sages have seen in thy face?"—Cowper.

What is the rule respecting interjections? Examples.

<sup>\* &</sup>quot;At seven of the clock." — Spectator. "By five of the clock." — Shakspeare.

180 SYNTAX.

§ 230. "It is not true, that the state of public morals and virtue is as elevated as that of the individuals who compose a community." — B. B. Edwards. "When a great principle is at stake, we must learn to dismiss all minor differences." — Ibid. "Now Moses kept the flock of Jethro, his father-in-law." —Exodus 3:1. "How little opportunity for mental improvement do even\* they possess!" — E. Everett. "He did not, like a leader, get up on an eminence, and from thence survey the subject in all its bearings." — Brougham. "Their road lay through the beautiful land where they had been so long lingering." — Prescott. "The sanctity of private property was recognized, as the surest guaranty of order and abundance." — Bancroft.

"Doth he come from where the swords flashed high?"—Hemans.
"We took our seats

By many a cottage-hearth, where he received

The welcome of an inmate come from far." - Wordsworth.

"Nor pride nor poverty dares come

Within that refuge-house, the tomb." - Croly.

"Liberty, as well as religion, has too deep an interest in the change which is to be effected."—Prof. C. Dewey. "As to the question of abstract right, I should hardly undertake its discussion at this time."—Dana. "I have all along gone on the ground of the mutual influence of the private upon the public, and the public upon the private relation."—Ibid. "Nor is this enterprise to be scoffed at as hopeless."—Channing. "It was my good fortune to meet in a dinner party, with more men of celebrity in science or polite literature, than are commonly found collected round the same table."—Coleridge.

## RULE XXII. - GENERAL RULE.

§ 231. The different parts of a sentence should be made to harmonize with one another; and the several clauses should be so constructed and arranged as to express clearly the various relations, connections, and dependences intended, according to the best usages of the language.

Repeat the general rule of Syntax.

<sup>\*</sup> See Rule 17, Rem. 3, Obs.

REM. 1. — This rule is sufficiently comprehensive to embrace all the different forms of construction in the language. It is, however, too general to afford special guidance to learners, and should be applied only in cases for which no definite rule is given.

Rem. 2.— The abverbs rather and better are often used in connection with the auxiliary had; as, "I had rather remain;"—" He had better return." These forms of expression are anomalous, but their use in the familiar style is too well established to be controverted. Good authors sometimes employ them also in elevated writings, but this practice is not to be recommended.

Examples: — "You are therefore to consider whether you had rather oblige than receive an obligation." — Spectator. "Practices which had much better be inferred from general rules." — N. A. Review. "They had rather part with life, than bear the thought of surviving

all that made life dear to them." - Hazlitt.

REM. 3. - The expressions, "had as lief," "had like," and "had ought," are anomalous and inelegant, and should be carefully avoided. Erroneous examples: - " More serious consequences had like to have resulted." -Prescott. "I had as lief the town-crier spoke my lines." — Shakspeare.

## False Syntax, under the General Rule.

"It belonged to that peculiar class of poetry, which never has, and never will awaken sympathy in the universal heart." - N. A. Review.

"Among all the animals upon which nature has impressed deformity and horror, there is none whom he durst not encounter." -Johnson.

"The sun looketh forth from the halls of the morning,

And flushes the clouds that begirt his career." - W. G. Clark.

"The manner in which these essays were given to the world, on separate sheets, and with an interval of a few days between the publication of each, distinguished them from every thing of the kind which had preceded them." - N. A. Review.

"Domestic society is the seminary of the social affections, the cradle of sensibility, where the first elements are acquired of that tenderness and humanity which cement mankind together; and which, were they entirely extinguished, the whole fabric of social institutions would be dissolved "- Hall.

"Deliver me from the hand of strange children, whose mouth speaketh vanity, and their right hand is a right hand of falsehood." - Ps. 144: 11.

"I have only touched on these several heads, which every one

182 SYNTAX.

who is conversant in discourses of this nature will easily enlarge upon in his own thoughts, and draw conclusions from them which may be useful to him in the conduct of his life." — Spectator.

"The perplexity that attends a multiplicity of criticisms by various hands, many of which are sure to be futile, many of them ill-founded, and some of them contradictory to others, is inconceivable." — Cowper.

"The greatest masters of critical learning differ among one another." — Spectator.

"Thus, oft by mariners are shown
Earl Godwin's castles overflown." — Swift.

#### GENERAL EXERCISES IN PARSING.

§ 232. "The happiness of life is made up of an infinite number of little things, and not of startling events and great emotions; and he who daily and hourly diffuses pleasure around him by kind offices, franks alutations, and cheerful looks, deserves as well of his species, as he, who, neglecting or despising all these, makes up for it by occasional acts of generosity, justice, or benevolence."—G. S. Hillard.

"It were, indeed, a bold task to venture to draw into comparison the relative merits of Jay and Hamilton."—Dr. Hawks.

"Success being now hopeless, preparations were made for a retreat." — Alison.

"The name of a mother; — what a long history does it bring with it of smiles and words of mildness, of tears shed by night and of sighings at the morning dawn, of love unrequited, of cares for which there can be no recompense on earth." — Prof. E. A. Park.

"How feeble were the attempts at planting towns, is evident from the nature of the tenure by which the lands near the Saco were held."—Bancroft.

"The language and literature, as well as the history of Spain, have, till within a few years past, attracted little attention in the United States; a neglect which would be a subject of the greater reproach to us, if we could not find some apology for it in the less pardonable indifference of other nations, who have more leisure to indulge themselves in the pleasures of literature than falls to the lot of the ever busy inhabitants of the United States."—N. Y. Review.

"When events are made familiar to us by history, we are perhaps disposed to undervalue the wisdom that foretold them."—Th. Campbell.

"Fortune, friends, kindred, home, - all were gone." - Prescott.

"This spirit of knight-errantry might lead us to undervalue his talents as a general,\* and to regard him † merely in the light of a lucky adventurer." — Ibid.

"There leviathan,

Hugest of living creatures, on the deep Stretched like a promontory, sleeps or swims, And seems a moving land." — Milton.

"But now the door is open'd soft and slow." — Prof. Wilson.

"We all of us feel, that virtue is not something adopted from necessity." — Channing.

"Sir William Berkley was elected governor." - Bancroft.

"I have little doubt, but that the contempt with which a ploughman would look down upon me for not knowing oats from barley, would transcend that of an astronomer at my not being able to distinguish between Cassiopeia and Ursa Major."—Prof. Wilson.

"No farther steps for procuring his release were taken at this time; either because the means for defraying the legal expenses could not be raised; or, which is quite as probable, because it was certain that Bunyan, thinking himself in conscience bound to preach in defiance of the law, would soon have made his case worse than it then was."—Southey.

"This court was composed of three officers, than whom none are more distinguished in our naval service." — N. A. Review.

"Of what immense benefit had it been to England in all subsequent ages, if her Elizabethan era had been a Christian era; if the great men who then toiled in the fields of knowledge, had all been Boyles and Miltons."—B. B. Edwards.

"If Christianity may be said to have given a permanent elevation to woman as an intellectual and moral being; it is as true, that the present age, above all others, has given play to her genius, and taught us to reverence its influence." — Story.

"The private wars of the nobles with each other, were the first cir-

cumstance which renewed the courage and revived the energy of the feudal barons."—Alison.

- "To be a foreigner,\* was always in England a reason of dislike."
  -- Johnson.
- "The mind courses to and fro through the past, and casts itself into the future." Am. Quart. Review.
  - "The rill is tuneless to his ear who feels No harmony within; the south wind steals As silent as unseen, amongst the leaves.

    Who has no inward beauty, none perceives, Though all around is beautiful."—Dana.
  - "Nine times the space that measures day and night To mortal men, he with his horrid crew Lay vanquished."— Milton.

## ANALYSIS.†

[It is particularly desirable that pupils should proceed as early as practicable from the formalities of common parsing, to the more important exercise of analyzing critically the structure of language. The mechanical routine of technical parsing is peculiarly liable to become monotonous and dull, while the practice of explaining the various relations and offices of words in a sentence, is adapted to call the mind of the learner into constant and vigorous action, and can hardly fail of exciting the deepest interest.]

- § 233. The *analysis* of a sentence consists in resolving it into its constituent parts, and pointing out their several relations, connections, and dependences.
- § 234. Every simple sentence consists essentially of two parts;—a subject and a predicate. The subject is that of which something is affirmed; and the predicate is that which is affirmed of the subject.

In what does the analysis of a sentence consist? Of what does every simple sentence consist? Define the subject and the predicate.

<sup>\*</sup> See Rule 4, Rem. 2.

<sup>†</sup>Andrews and Stoddard's Latin Grammar, Kühner's and Crosby's Greek Grammar, De Sacy's General Grammar, and Crane's English Grammar.

§ 235. The subject and predicate may be distinguished as either grammatical or logical.\*

The grammatical subject is a noun, or some word, phrase, or sentence, used as a noun.

Examples:— "No man was ever great by imitation." — Johnson. "To tell our own secrets, is generally folly." — Ibid. "Who can understand his errors." — Ps. 19:12. "That you have wronged me, doth appear in this." — Shak.

The *logical subject* includes all those words which are employed to express the whole idea of the subject.

Examples: — "No man was ever great by imitation." — "To tell our own secrets, is generally folly." — "The desire of being pleased, is universal."

The grammatical predicate is a finite verb.†

Examples: — "No genius was ever blasted by the breath of critics."—
Johnson. "Malice often bears down truth."—Ibid. "We dwell
with pious fondness on the characters and virtues of the departed."
— Story.

The *logical predicate* includes all those words which are employed to express the whole idea of the predicate.

Examples: — "No genius was ever blasted by the breath of critics."—
"Malice often bears down truth." — "The discriminating power of conscience is improved by reflecting upon the moral character of our actions." — Wayland.

What is the grammatical subject? Examples. What is the logical subject? Examples. What is the grammatical predicate? Examples. The logical predicate. Examples.

\* The logical subject and logical predicate are often called the modified subject and modified predicate. The terms logical subject and logical predicate were introduced by De Sacy.

† Many grammarians still adhere to the principle, that the grammatical

16\*

<sup>†</sup> Many grammarians still adhere to the principle, that the grammatical predicate may consist of a noun or an adjective, in connection with the verb to be. Thus, in the sentence, "Snow is white," it is said that is does not express what is asserted of snow, and therefore the grammatical predicate is not properly is, but is white. In the sentence, "He has friends," we might, with equal propriety, say that the word has does not express what is asserted of he, and therefore the grammatical predicate is not properly has, but has friends. This mode of reasoning proves too much, and therefore proves nothing. It would destroy at once all distinction between the grammatical and the logical predicate.

186 SYNTAX.

REM. 1. — The grammatical subject and predicate are often the same as the logical. Thus, in the sentence, "Time flies," the whole idea of the subject is expressed by the noun Time, and the whole idea of the predicate, by the verb flies. Time is therefore both the grammatical and the logical subject, and flies both the grammatical and the logical predicate.

REM. 2. — The adjuncts of the subject and predicate may themselves be distinguished as either grammatical or logical. Thus, in the sentence, "We are inclined to believe those who have never deceived us," the grammatical object of to believe is those, and the logical object is, those who have never deceived us. So also, in the sentence, "Neither genius nor practice will always supply a hasty writer with the most proper diction," the grammatical object of with is diction, while the logical object is the most proper diction. See § 239, Rem.

§ 236. The subject and the predicate may also be either simple or compound.

A simple subject is a single noun, or a word or phrase used as a noun, either standing by itself or accompanied by modifying adjuncts; as, "The pride of wit has kept ages busy in the discussion of useless questions." — Johnson. In this sentence, the simple grammatical subject is pride, and the simple logical subject is the pride of wit.

Rem. — The learner will observe that words which are to be parsed grammatically as modifying the subject, often belong logically to the predicate. Thus, in the sentence, "The fields are green," the word green belongs grammatically to the subject and logically to the predicate.

A compound subject consists of two or more simple subjects; as, "Wild beasts and savage Indians lurked in the ravines." The compound grammatical subject, in this sentence, consists of the words beasts and Indians. The compound logical subject embraces the phrases wild beasts and savage Indians.

A simple predicate is a single verb, either standing alone or accompanied by modifying adjuncts; as, "No genius was ever blasted by the breath of critics." The simple grammatical predicate, in this sentence, is was blasted, and the simple logical predicate is was ever blasted by the breath of critics.

Explain the application of the terms logical and grammatical to the adjuncts of the subject and predicate. What is a simple subject? Examples. A compound subject? Examples. A simple predicate? Examples.

A compound predicate consists of two or more simple predicates; as, "Men overpowered by distress, eagerly listen to the first offers of relief, close with every scheme, and believe every promise." — Johnson. In this sentence, the compound grammatical predicate embraces the words, listen, close, and believe. The compound logical predicate embraces all the words that are expressed in Italics.

#### EXERCISES.

§ 237. "Wisdom is worthy of all diligence." — "Anger and haste hinder good counsel." — "Pharaoh and his host were drowned in the Red Sea." — "The Roman empire fell by its own corruptions." — "The city was besieged and taken." — "The violence of the storm and the darkness of the night, prevented all approach to the ship, and rendered our situation truly alarming."

Point out the grammatical and the logical subjects and predicates in the foregoing sentences. Which of them are simple, and which compound?

# Modifications of the Grammatical Subject.

- § 238. A grammatical subject may be modified in the following different ways: —
- 1. By an apposition noun, with its modifying adjuncts; as, "Romulus, the founder of Rome, slew his brother."
- Rem. As the grammatical subject and predicate may be used either with or without modifying adjuncts; so also a word employed to modify the grammatical subject or predicate, may itself be used either with or without modification by other words. Thus, in the sentence, "Romulus, the founder of Rome, slew his brother," the word founder, which is in apposition with Romulus, is itself modified by the adjuncts the and of Rome. But in the sentence, "Good men are esteemed," the word good, which modifies men, is itself unmodified.
- 2. By the object of a preposition, with its modifying adjuncts; as, "The report of this unfortunate occurrence soon reached our ears."
- 3. By a noun or pronoun in the possessive; as, "His departure was delayed."

A compound predicate? Examples. What are the different ways in which a grammatical subject may be modified? Give an example of each class.

- 4. By an adjective or participle, with its adjuncts; as, "Wise men lay up knowledge; "——"Retiring from public life, he devoted the remainder of his days to study and meditation."
- 5. By a verb in the infinitive, with its adjuncts; as, "His efforts to acquire knowledge were not unrewarded."
- 6. By an entire clause; as, "The man who feels himself ignorant, should at least be modest."

# Modifications of the Grammatical Predicate.

- $\S$  239. A grammatical predicate may be modified in the following different ways:—
- 1. By a noun or pronoun in the same case as the subject, with its modifying adjuncts; as, "She walks a queen."
- 2. By the object of the verb, with its adjuncts; as, "No man forgets his original trade."
- 3. By an adverb, with its adjuncts; as, "He is very seldom seen."
- 4. By a verb in the infinitive, with its adjuncts; as, "He desires to study French."
- 5. By an adjective referring to the subject, with its adjuncts; as, "He was faithful to his employers."
- 6. By the object of a preposition, with its adjuncts; as, "He has returned to his friends."
- 7. By an entire clause; as, "I am informed that he is about to leave us."

Rem. — The principal words employed to modify the grammatical subject and predicate, may themselves be modified by other words, and these again by others still. All these different offices should be pointed out in the analysis of a sentence. Thus, in the sentence, "The discriminating power of conscience is improved by reflecting upon the moral character of our actions," upon the moral character of our actions, is an adjunct of reflecting; the, moral, and of our actions, are adjuncts of character; and our modifies actions. See § 135, Rem. 2.

In what ways may a grammatical predicate be modified? Give an example of each class. How may the principal words used to modify the subject and predicate be themselves affected. Illustrate.

#### ORDER OF ANALYSIS.

§ 240. In analyzing a simple sentence, it should first be resolved into its logical subject and logical predicate.

In analyzing the logical subject, the grammatical subject should first be pointed out, and then its various modifying adjuncts. These adjuncts themselves should also be analyzed, and the office of each word particularly explained. The logical predicate should be disposed of in a similar manner.

If the sentence to be analyzed is compound, the pupil should first distinguish the different members or clauses, and point out the connectives. He may then proceed to analyze the different members or simple sentences, in the manner already described.

# § 241. MODELS OF ANALYSIS.

[The Models here given illustrate very fully the foregoing principles, and should receive the special attention of the learner.]

"To avenge an injury, places us on a level with our enemy."

In this sentence, the logical subject is, to avenge an injury; and places us on a level with our enemy, is the logical predicate. The grammatical subject is, to avenge, which here performs the office of both noun and verb. An injury is the logical object of to avenge, and injury is the grammatical object. Injury is modified by the article an. The grammatical predicate is places. The adjuncts of places are us and on a level with our enemy. Us is the object of places; level is the object of on, which relates it to places; and a modifies level. With our enemy is the logical adjunct of level. Enemy is the object of with, which relates it to level; and our modifies enemy.

"Established custom is not easily broken, till some great event shakes the whole system of things."—Johnson.

This sentence embraces two clauses, which are connected by the coniunction till. First clause:—Established custom is not easily broken. Second clause:—Some great event shakes the whole system of things.

Analysis of the first clause: — The logical subject is, Established custom; and is not easily broken, is the logical predicate. The grammatical sub-

ject is custom, which is modified by the participial adjective Established. The grammatical predicate is, is broken, which is modified by the adverbs not and easily.

Analysis of the second clause:—The logical subject is, some great event; and the logical predicate is, shakes the whole system of things. The grammatical subject is event, which is modified by the adjectives some and great. The grammatical predicate is shakes, which is modified by its logical object, the whole system of things. The grammatical object of shakes is system, which is modified by the adjuncts the, whole, and of things. Of shows the relation between system and things.

"The reverence for our own moral nature, on which we have now insisted, needs earnest and perpetual inculcation."—Channing.

The principal sentence here embraces a subordinate or modifying clause. This subordinate clause is, on which we have now insisted. It is connected with the rest of the sentence by the relative pronoun which. Which relates to reverence, which is the subject of the principal verb needs; and is governed by the preposition on, which relates it to the verb have insisted in the subordinate clause.

The logical subject of the principal sentence is, The reverence for our own moral nature on which we have now insisted; and the logical predicate is, needs earnest and perpetual inculcation. The grammatical subject is reverence. This is modified by the article the, by the phrase, for our own moral nature, and by the clause, on which we have now insisted. Our, own, and moral, modify nature; and nature is the object of for, which relates it to reverence. The grammatical subject is needs, which is modified by its logical object, earnest and perpetual inculcation. The grammatical object of needs is inculcation, which is modified by the adjectives earnest and perpetual. The conjunction and connects the two adjectives.

In the subordinate clause, on which we have now insisted, we is both the grammatical and the logical subject. The logical predicate embraces have now insisted and on which. The grammatical predicate is have insisted, which is modified by now and on which. On and which have already been disposed of.

§ 342. "Leonidas and his three hundred Spartans fought bravely at Thermopylæ, against the whole Persian army."—"In ancient times, the benefactors of mankind were deemed worthy of immortal honors."—Misfortunes make men more thoughtful."—"Numa-Pompilius, the most fortunate of Roman kings, is said to have lived above eighty years."—"Industry and application will make amends

for the want of a quick and ready wit."—" A new order of cultivated intellect is greatly needed."—" Those who attain any excellence, commonly spend life in one pursuit."—" Neither genius nor practice will always supply a hasty writer with the most proper diction."

"Men of great and stirring powers, who are destined to mould the age in which they are born, must first mould themselves upon it." — Coleridge.

"War will never cease, while the field of battle is the field of glory, and the most luxuriant laurels grow from a root nourished with blood."—Channing.

"The earth was made so various, that the mind Of desultory man, studious of change, And pleased with novelty, might be indulged. Prospects, however lovely, may be seen Till half their beauties fade; the weary sight, Too well acquainted with their smile, slides off Fastidious, seeking less familiar scenes."— Cowper.

#### CLASSIFICATION OF CLAUSES.

§ 243. When the different members or clauses of a compound sentence are so combined that each of them is complete and independent of itself, they are called *coördinate* clauses.

Examples: — "It was night, and the moon shone brightly." — "Rowing is a healthful exercise, but it is not free from danger." — "A scorner loveth not reproof, neither will he go unto the wise." — "Employ the present wisely, for \* the future is uncertain."

§ 244. When one of the members of a compound sentence is dependent upon another, the dependent clause is termed subordinate, and the clause which is independent is termed, the principal or leading clause.

Examples:—"The Britons, with whom Casar contended, defended their country bravely."—"It cannot be questioned, that knowledge confers power."—"Where your treasure is, there will your heart be also."—"He will be pardoned, if he repent."

In the foregoing examples the subordinate clauses are printed in Italics.

Define coördinate clauses. Examples. Illustrate the distinction between principal and subordinate clauses.

<sup>\*</sup> When two or more clauses are so combined that one of them bears to another the relation of cause, inference, or conclusion, they are usually classed with coördinate clauses.

#### GRAMMATICAL CONNECTION OF WORDS.

[Besides the regular system of Analysis already given, various kindred exercises may be occasionally resorted to with great profit. One of the most useful and important of this class of exercises, is that of tracing the grammatical connection between words situated in different parts of a sentence. This practice may be successfully introduced in connection with ordinary parsing exercises, before the learner has given any special attention to the general subject of Analysis. The following example will give some idea of the mode of conducting this exercise.]

#### Model.

§ 245. "There is one Being to whom we can look with a perfect conviction of finding that security, which nothing about us can give, and which nothing about us can take away." — Greenwood.

Let it be required to trace the connection between the words away and is:—Away modifies can take; can take is connected with can give by and, which is governed by can give, and relates to security; security is the object of finding, which is related by of to conviction; conviction is the object of with, which relates it to can look; to expresses the relation between whom and can look, and whom relates to Being, which is the subject of is.

Let it be required to trace the connection between that and we:— That defines security, which is the object of finding; finding is related by of to conviction; conviction is related by with to can look, which agrees with we.

"Our cemeteries, rightly selected, and properly arranged, may be made subservient to some of the highest purposes of religion and human duty." — Story.

In the foregoing sentence, let the pupil trace the grammatical connection from selected to the verb; — from properly to the verb; — from highest to subservient; — from duty to subservient.

"He who would advance in any department of knowledge, must know what others have done before him."— B. B. Edwards.

Trace the connection, in the foregoing sentence, from the verb would advance to the verb must know;—from must know to have done; from knowledge to would advance;—from him to others.

## PUNCTUATION.

- § 246. Punctuation treats of the points or marks inserted in written composition, for the purpose of showing more clearly the sense intended to be conveyed, and the pauses required in reading.
- § 247. The principal points or marks employed in punctuation, are the comma (,), the semicolon (;), the colon (:), the period (.), the note of interrogation (?), the note of exclamation (!), and the dash (—).
- REM. 1.— The comma requires a momentary pause; the semicolon, a pause somewhat longer than the comma; the colon, a pause somewhat longer than the semicolon; and the period, a full stop. The note of interrogation, or the note of exclamation, may take the place of any of these, and accordingly requires a pause of the same length as the point for which it is substituted.
- Rem. 2. The duration of these pauses depends on the character of the composition; the grave style requiring much longer intervals than the lively or impassioned.
- § 248. The sense of a passage often requires a pause in reading, where usage does not allow the insertion of a point in writing; as, "He woke | to die; "—" Our schemes of thought in childhood | are lost in those of youth." On the other hand, points are sometimes inserted merely to indicate the syntactical construction, without requiring the suspension of the voice in reading; as in the phrase, "No, Sir."

## § 249. — THE COMMA.

RULE 1.— When a relative and its antecedent are separated from each other by one or more words, a comma should generally be inserted before the relative; as, "Think not man was made in vain, who has such an eternity reserved for him."— Spectator.

Of what does punctuation treat? What are the marks chiefly employed in punctuation? What pauses do they severally require? What departure from the grammatical punctuation of a sentence is often required in reading? Examples.

"There is a *pleasure* in poetic pains, Which only poets know." — Cowper.

Rule 2.— When two or more words come between the adjective and its noun, a comma is placed after the intervening words; as, "To dispel these errors, and to give a scope to navigation, equal to the grandeur of his designs, Prince Henry called in the aid of science."— Irving.

Rule 3.— When the subject of a sentence consists of several nominatives, or of a single nominative followed by an adjunct consisting of several words, a comma should be inserted before the following verb.

Examples: — "The effect of this universal diffusion of gay and splendid light, was to render the preponderating deep green more solemn." — Dwight.

"The golden sun, The planets, all the infinite host of heaven, Are shining on the sad abodes of death."

Rule 4.— When a sentence or clause is used as the nominative to a preceding or following verb, it should be separated from the verb by a comma; as, "how dearly it remembered the parent island, is told by the English names of its towns."— Bancroft.

RULE 5. — Two successive words in the same construction, without a conjunction expressed, are generally separated by a comma; as, "An aged, venerable man."

"Has Nature, in her calm, majestic march, Faltered with age at last?"—Bryant.

Rem. 1.—An apparent exception to this rule often occurs in the case of two successive adjectives; as in the expression, "A venerable old man." But the two adjectives, in this example, are not in the same construction, since old qualifies man, while venerable qualifies the phrase old man.

Rem. 2.—A comma may also be inserted before a conjunction expressed, if either of the words connected is followed by an adjunct consisting of several words; as, "Intemperance destroys the vigor of our bodies, and the strength of our minds."

Rule 6. — Three or more distinct, successive words in the same

[The teacher may repeat an example under each of the rules for the use of the several points, and require the pupil to give the rule that applies to it. Pupils should also be required to select examples from other works, illustrating all the rules of punctuation.]

construction, with or without a conjunction expressed, should be separated by commas; as,

"Beside the bed where parting life was laid.

And sorrow, guilt, and pain, by turns dismayed,

The reverend champion stood." — Goldsmith.

"How poor, how rich, how abject, how august, How complicate, how wonderful, is man!"—Young.

Rem. — The same apparent exception occurs in this rule as in the last. In the expression, "A light bluish green tint," bluish modifies green, and light modifies the phrase bluish green; while the three words light bluish green, taken together, qualify tint.

Rule 7.—Successive pairs of words should be separated from each other by commas, as, "The authority of *Plato* and *Aristotle*, of *Zeno* and *Epicurus*, still reigned in the schools."

Rule 8.— When the different members of a compound sentence contain distinct propositions, they are generally separated from each other by commas.

Examples: — "They shrunk from no dangers, and they feared no hardships." — Story. "And thus their physical science became magic, their astronomy became astrology, the study of the composition of bodies became alchemy, mathematics became the contemplation of the spiritual relations of number and figure, and philosophy became theosophy." — Whewell.

RULE 9. — When the different members of a sentence express a mutual comparison, contrast, or opposition, they should generally be separated from each other by commas.

Examples:—"The more I reflected upon it, the more important it appeared."—Goldsmith. "The quaker revered principles, not men; truth, not power."—Bancroft. "As the heart panteth after the water brooks, so panteth my soul after Thee."—Ps. 42: 1.

Rule 10.—To prevent ambiguity in cases of ellipsis, a comma is sometimes inserted in the place of the word or phrase omitted.

Example: — "As a companion, he was severe and satirical; as a friend, captious and dangerous; in his domestic sphere, harsh, jealous, and irascible."

RULE 11.— When two or more successive clauses end with words sustaining a common relation to some word in the following clause, a comma should generally be inserted after each.

Examples:—"The truest mode of enlarging our benevolence, is not to quicken our sensibility towards great masses, or wide-spread evils, but to approach, comprehend, sympathize with, and act upon, a continually increasing number of individuals."—Channing. "Such compulsion is not merely incompatible with, but impossible in, a free or elective government."—H. Mann.

Rem. — When, however, the word in the following clause, is not accompanied by several words, the comma before it is often omitted; as, "We may, and often do employ these means."

Rule 12. — When several words intervene between the verb of a principal clause and the commencement of a subordinate clause, the clauses should be separated from each other by a comma; as, "Had we stopped here, it might have done well enough." — "He was nineteen years of age, when he bade adieu to his native shores." — Prescott.

Rule 13. — When the connection of a sentence is interrupted by one or more words, not closely related in construction to what precedes, a comma should generally be inserted both before and after the word or words introduced; as,

"He, like the world, his ready visit pays Where fortune smiles." — Young.

Rule 14.— The independent case, and the infinitive absolute, with their adjuncts, should be separated from the rest of the sentence by commas.

Examples: — "To foster industry, to promote union, to cherish religious peace,—these were the honest purposes of Lord Baltimore during his long supremacy."—Bancroft. "The playwriters, where are they? and the poets, are their fires extinguished?"—H. More.

"Wept o'er his wounds, or, tales of sorrow done, Shouldered his crutch, and showed how fields were won."

Goldsmit.

"Rejoice, you men of Angiers, ring your bells!" -Shakspeare.

Rule 15.— When either of two words in apposition is accompanied by an adjunct, the latter of them, with the words depending upon it, should be set off from the rest of the sentence by commas; as, "The following is a dialogue between Socrates, the great Athenian philosopher, and one Glaucon, a private man."

Rule 16. — When a word or phrase is repeated for the sake of emphasis, a comma should be inserted both before and after it; as, "Here, and here only, lies the democratic character of the revolution." — Bancroft.

"Where are the flowers, the fair young flowers, that lately sprang and stood,

In brighter light, and softer airs, a beauteous sisterhood!"-Bryant.

Note. — When the word or words to be set off according to the three preceding rules, stand at the beginning or end of a sentence, one of the commas is of course unnecessary.

## § 250.—THE SEMICOLON.

Rule 1.—When a sentence which is complete in construction, is followed by a clause containing a reason, an explanation, an inference, or a contrast, the latter clause should generally be preceded by a semicolon; as, "The past seems to promise it; but the fulfilment depends on the future."—"To the latter it is a double advantage; for it diminishes their pain here, and rewards them with heavenly bliss hereafter."—Goldsmith.

Rule 2. — When several successive clauses have a common connection with a preceding or following clause, a semicolon is generally inserted after each.

Examples:—"Children, as they gamboled on the beach; reapers, as they gathered the harvest; mowers, as they rested upon the scythe; mothers, as they busied themselves about the household; — were victims to an enemy who disappeared the moment a blow was struck, and who was ever present where a garrison or a family ceased its vigilance." — Bancroft. "Reason as we may, it is impossible not to read, in such a fate, much that we know not how to interpret; much of provocation to cruel deeds and deep resentment; much of apology for wrong and perfidy; much of doubt and misgiving as to the past; much of painful recollections; much of dark forebodings." — Story.

Rule 3.— When several particulars are enumerated in a sentence, some of which are expressed in several words, they are often separated from each other by semicolons; as, "The Aragonese cortes was composed of four branches or arms; the ricos hombres, or great barons; the lesser nobles, comprehending the knights; the clergy; and the commons."—Prescott.

RULE 4. — Two or more successive short sentences having no common dependence, are often separated by semicolons instead of periods.

Example:—" As we have already noticed, its bruised leaves afforded a paste from which paper was manufactured; its juice was formed into an intoxicating beverage, pulque, of which the natives to this day, are excessively fond; its leaves supplied an impenetrable thatch for the more humble dwellings; thread of which coarse stuffs were made, and strong cords, were drawn from its tough and twisted fibres; pins and needles were made of the thorns at the extremity of its leaves; and the root, when properly cooked, was converted into a palatable and nutritous food."—Prescott.

#### THE COLON.

§ 251. The colon is at present much less used than formerly;  $17^*$ 

its place being often supplied by the period, the semicolon, or the dash. There are, however, many cases in which no other point can with propriety be substituted. The following examples will give an idea of the circumstances under which the colon is most frequently employed:—

"The grant was absolute and exclusive: it conceded the land and islands; the rivers and the harbors; the mines and the fisheries." — Bancroft.

"There is only one cause for the want of great men in any period: nature does not think fit to produce them."—Hallam.

"Johnson puts the case thus: The Historian tells either what is false or what is true. In the former case he is no historian. In the latter, he has no opportunity for displaying his abilities." — Macaulay.

"The following are the names of the survivors, four of whom were seated on the platform from which this address was spoken: — Dr. Joseph Fiske, Messrs. Daniel Mason, Benjamin Locke, William Munroe," etc. — E. Everett.

"In Num. 14: 33, it is predicted, that Israel shall wander in the wilderness forty years." — Biblical Repository.

"The works of Wm. E. Channing, D.D., with an Introduction. Boston: James Munroe and Company."

#### THE PERIOD.

§ 252. The period is placed at the end of a complete sentence.

Rem.—A period is sometimes inserted between two complete sentences, which are connected by a conjunction; as, "By degrees the confidence of the natives was exhausted; they had welcomed powerful guests, who had promised to become their benefactors, and who now robbed their humble granaries. But the worst evil in the new settlement was the character of the emigrants."—Bancroft.

The period should be used after all abbreviations; as, "Mass.," "N. Y.," "M. D.," "Aug," "Esq.," "Mrs.," "Mr." Such expressions as 1st, 3d, 10th, 4's, 9's, 4to, 8vo, 12mo, do not require the period after them, since they are not strictly abbreviations, the figures supplying the place of the first letters of the words.

#### THE DASH.

§ 253. The dash is used where a sentence is left unfinished; where there is a sudden turn, or an abrupt transition; and where a significant pause is required.

Examples: — "Let the government do this — the people will do the rest." — Macaulay.

"Ah, that maternal smile! it answers — Yes." — Cowper.

"He suffered, — but his pangs are o'er; Enjoyed, — but his delights are fled; Had friends, — his friends are now no more; And foes, — his foes are dead." — Montgomery.

REM.—Modern writers often employ dashes in place of the parenthesis.

#### THE NOTE OF INTERROGATION.

§ 254. The note of interrogation is placed at the end of a sentence in which a question is asked; as, "What is to be done?"

#### THE NOTE OF EXCLAMATION.

§ 255. The note of exclamation is used after expressions of sudden emotion or passion, and after solemn invocations and addresses; as,

"Liberty! Freedom! Tyranny is dead:
Run hence, proclaim, cry it about the streets!" — Shakspeare.
"Hail, holy light! offspring of heaven firstborn!" — Milton.

REM.—When the interjection Oh is used, the point is generally placed immediately after it; but when O is employed, the point is placed after one or more intervening words; as,

"Oh! my offence is rank, it smells to heaven!" -Shakspeare.

"But thou, O Hope! with eyes so fair,— What was thy delighted measure?"—Collins.

The following characters are also employed in Composition:-

§ 256. The parenthesis () generally includes a word, phrase, or remark, which is merely incidental or explanatory, and which might be omitted without injury to the grammatical construction; as,

"The tuneful Nine (so sacred legends tell)

First waked their heavenly lyre these scenes to tell!" — Campbell.

"Know then this truth, (enough for man to know,) Virtue alone is happiness below."—Pope.

Rem.—The parenthesis is now employed less frequently than formerly; commas or dashes being used to supply its place; as, "The colonists—such is human nature—desired to burn the town in which they had been so wretched."—Bancroft.

§ 257. Brackets [] are used to enclose a word, phrase, or remark, which is introduced for the purpose of explanation or correction; as, "Putting off the courtier, he [the king] now puts on the philosopher."

REM.—The parenthesis is often used to supply the place of brackets, and brackets are occasionally used to supply the place of the parenthesis.

- § 258. The apostrophe (') is used to denote the omission of one or more letters; as, o'er, tho'. It is likewise the sign of the possessive case, being used instead of a letter which was formerly inserted in its place; as, man's for manes or manis.
- § 259. Marks of quotation ("") are used to indicate that the exact words of another are introduced; as, "In my first parliament," said James, "I was a novice."

Rem.—When a quotation is introduced within a quotation, it is usually distinguished by single inverted commas; as, "I was not only a ship-boy on the 'high and giddy mast,' but also in the cabin where every menial office fell to my lot." If both quotations commence or terminate together, this commencement or termination is indicated by the use of three commas; as, "In the course of this polite attention, he pointed in a certain direction and exclaimed, 'That is Mr. Sherman of Connecticut; a man who never said a foolish thing in his life.'"

When a point is inserted immediately after a quotation, it should be placed within the quotation marks.

- § 260. A small dash (~) is sometimes placed over a vowel to denote that it is long; as, nōble. A breve (~), placed over a vowel, shows that it is short; as, respite.
- § 261. A mark of accent (') is sometimes placed over a syllable to denote that it requires particular stress in pronunciation; as, doing.
- $\S$  262. A diæresis (``) is sometimes placed over the latter of two successive vowels to show that they do not form a diphthong; as, co-öperate.
- § 263. The *cedilla* (,) is a mark which is sometimes placed under the letter c to show that it has the sound of s; as in "façade."
- § 264. The asterisk (\*), the obelisk (†), the double dagger (‡), and parallels ( $\parallel$ ), as well as letters and figures, are employed in referring to notes in the margin, or at the bottom of the page.
- § 265. The ellipsis (\*\*\*) or (——) is used to denote the omission of some letters or words; as, "H \*\*\* y M \*\*\*\*\* l,"
  "C——s K——g." See also an example in the note on p. 151.
  - § 266. The brace { is used to connect words which have a common application.

The apostrophe. Examples. Marks of quotation. Examples. How are long vowels distinguished? — short vowels? The diæresis. The asterisk, obelisk, etc. Marks of ellipsis. Examples. The brace. Examples.

§ 267. The caret (A) is employed in writing, to show that some word or letter has been omitted; as, "Washington uniformly treatand

ed Mr. Sherman with great respect A attention."

§ 268. The hyphen (-) is used after a part of a word at the end of a line, to show that the remainder is at the beginning of the next line; and to connect the simple parts of a compound word, as, all-absorbing.

Note.—In dividing a word at the end of a line, the break should always be made between two syllables, and not between different letters of the same syllable. See § 71.

- § 269. The index ( ) refers to some remarkable passage.
- § 270. The section (§) is used to distinguish the parts into which a work or a portion of a work is divided.
- § 271. The paragraph (¶) is used in the Old and New Testaments to denote the beginning of a new subject. In other books paragraphs are distinguished by commencing a new line farther from the margin than the beginning of the other lines. This is called *indenting*.

[For exercises in punctuation, the teacher may write on a blackboard some portion of a well pointed book or other piece of writing, omitting all the points; and then require the pupil to transcribe and punctuate it. When this is done, the several copies may be compared and corrected. The teacher may also read one or more paragraphs aloud, and require the pupils to write and punctuate what is read, without seeing the printed copy. Exercises of this description should be repeated till the pupils become familiar with all the common principles of punctuation. Pupils should also be required to devote careful attention to this subject, in connection with their ordinary exercises in composition.]

The caret. Examples. The hyphen. Examples. Division of a word at the end of a line. The index. Examples. The section. Examples. The paragraph. Examples.

# PART IV.

## PROSODY.

§ 272. Prosody treats of accent, quantity, and the laws of versification \*

§ 273. Accent is the stress which is laid on one or more syllables of a word, in pronunciation; as, reverberate, undertake.

The term accent is also applied, in poetry, to the stress laid on monosyllabic words; as,

"Content is wealth, the riches of the mind." - Dryden.

§ 274. The quantity of a syllable is the relative time occupied in its pronunciation. A syllable may be long in quantity, as fate; or short, as let. The Greeks and Romans based their poetry on the quantity of syllables; but modern versification depends chiefly upon accent, the quantity of syllables being almost wholly disregarded.

§ 275. A pause is a brief suspension of the voice in reading or speaking.

There are two pauses which are peculiar to poetry; — the cæsúral and the final. The cæsúra is a pause which is introduced into a line to render the versification more melodious; as,

"Not half so swift | the trembling doves can fly."
"Thrones and imperial powers, | offspring of heaven."

REM. 1. — The cæsural pause generally occurs after the fourth, fifth, or sixth syllable; but it occasionally takes place after the third or the seventh.

Rem. 2. — When the cæsura occurs after the fourth syllable, the verse is lively and spirited; as,

"Her lively looks | a sprightly mind disclose, Quick as her eyes | and as unfixed as those."

Of what does prosody treat? What is accent? Examples. What is said of quantity? What is a pause? What pauses are peculiar to poetry? Give an account of each. Examples.

<sup>\*</sup> Emphasis, Tone, Pitch and Inflection, which are often treated of under the head of Prosody, belong more properly to Elecution.

REM. 3. — When the cæsura occurs after the fifth syllable, the verse loses its brisk and lively air, and becomes more smooth, gentle, and flowing; as,

"Eternal sunshine | of the spotless mind, Each prayer accepted | and each wish resigned."

REM. 4. — When the cæsura occurs after the sixth syllable, the verse becomes more solemn and its measure more stately; as,

"The wrath of Peleus' son, | the direful spring Of all the Grecian woes, | O Goddess, sing."

The final pause is that which occurs at the end of a line.

In reading poetry, careful attention should be given to the final and cæsural pauses.

#### VERSIFICATION.

§ 276. Versification is a measured arrangement of words in which the accent is made to recur at certain regular intervals.

Rem. — This definition applies only to modern verse. In Greek and Latin poetry, it is the regular recurrence of long syllables, according to settled laws, which constitutes verse.

§ 277. — There are two kinds of verse; — rhyme and blank verse.

Rhyme is the correspondence of sounds in the last words or syllables of verses; \* as,

\* Thus to relieve the wretched was his pride,
And even his failings leaned to virtue's side." — Goldsmith.

REM. 1.—For two syllables to form a full and perfect rhyme, it is necessary that the vowel be the same in both; that the parts following the vowel be the same; that the parts preceding the vowel be different; and that the syllables be accented.†

Blank verse is verse without rhyme; as,

"So live, that when thy summons comes to join
The innumerable caravan that moves
To that mysterious realm, where each shall take
His chamber in the silent halls of death,
Thou go not, like the quarry-slave, at night,
Scourged to his dungeon, but, sustained and soothed
By an unfaltering trust, approach the grave,
Like one that draws the drapery of his couch
About him, and lies down to pleasant dreams."— Bryant.

What care should be observed in reading poetry? What is versification? What different kinds of verse are there? Define rhyme. Examples. Define blank verse. Examples.

<sup>\*</sup> The lines of poetry are properly called verses.

Rem. 2.—Blank verse possesses, in many respects, important advantages over rhyme. It allows the lines to run into one another with perfect freedom, and is hence adapted to subjects of dignity and force, which demand more free and manly numbers than can be commanded in rhyme. Rhyme, on the other hand, is undoubtedly the most important ornament of English versification.

Rem. 3. — Blank verse is always written in lines of ten syllables. Rhymed verses may consist of any number of syllables.

§ 278. A foot is a rhythmical division of a verse; as,

"Our thoughts | as bound | less, and | our souls | as free."

§ 279. A couplet, or distich, consists of two verses making complete sense; as,

"Indulge the true ambition to excel
In that best art, — the art of living well."

§ 280. A triplet consists of three verses which rhyme together; as,

"Of many things, some few I shall explain,
Teach thee to shun the dangers of the main,
And how at length the promised land to gain." — Dryden.

§ 281. Alliteration is the frequent recurrence of the same letter; as,

"The lordly lion leaves his lonely lair."

" Weave the warp and weave the woof."

§ 282. A stanza is a combination of several lines, or verses, constituting a regular division of a poem.

Rем. — In popular language, stanzas are frequently called verses.

§ 283. Scanning is the resolving of verses into the several feet of which they are composed.

§ 284. The principal feet used in English poetry are,-

1. The Iambus, which consists of two syllables; the first unaccented, and the second accented; as, con-ténd.

2. The *Trochee*, which consists of two syllables; the first accented, and the second unaccented; as, nó-ble.

3. The Anapest, which consists of three syllables; the first two unaccented, and the last accented; as, in-ter-céde.

 $\S$  285. The following feet are employed less frequently: — (1.) The spondee, which consists of two accented syllables; (2.) the pyrrhic, which consists of two unaccented syllables; (3.) the dactyle, consisting of three

What is a foot? Examples. What is a couplet? Examples. What is a triplet? Examples. What is alliteration? Examples. Define a stanza. What is scanning? What kind of feet are principally used in English poetry? Examples of each.

syllables, of which the first only is accented; (4.) the amphibrach, consisting of three syllables, of which the second only is accented; (5.) the tribrach, consisting of three unaccented syllables.

#### Iambic Verse.

§ 286. Iambic verse is composed of iambic feet, and has the accent on the even syllables. The most common forms are the following:—

1. Four iambuses, or eight syllables in a line; as,

"And máy | at lást | my weá | ry áge Find oút | the peáce | ful hér | mitáge."

Rem. 1. —This measure is sometimes varied, to adapt it to light subjects, by taking an additional unaccented syllable; as,

"Or íf | ît bé | thy wíll | and pléas | ure, Diréct | my plough | to find | a tréas | ure."

REM. 2. - In some cases, a syllable is cut off from the first foot; as,

"Praise | to Gód, | immór | tal praise, Fór | the lóve | that crówns | our days."

2. Five iambuses, or ten syllables in a line; as,

"For mé | your trib | utá | ry stóres | combine."

REM. 1.— This is usually called the heroic measure, and is the most elevated and dignified kind of English verse. It frequently admits of some variety, particularly at the beginning or end of a line. A trochee is sometimes employed instead of an iambus, and an unaccented syllable is occasionally attached to the last foot; as,

"His house she enters; there to be a light Shining within, when all without is night;—

A guar | dian-an | gel, o'er | his life | presid | ing, Doubling | his pleas | ures, and | his cares divid | ing." — Rogers.

Rem. 2.—A verse of six feet, or twelve syllables, called an *Alexandrine*, is occasionally introduced into heroic poetry, especially at the close of a passage; as,

"Time writes no wrinkle on thine azure brow; —
Such as | Crea | tion's dawn | beheld, | thou roll | est now."

Rem. 3.—Heroic verse may be written either with or without rhyme. Milton's Paradise Lost, Thomson's Seasons, Cowper's Task, and Pope's Translation of Homer, are examples of heroic verse.

REM. 4. —The four lined stanzas of Psalmody often consist of alternate verses of four and three feet; as,

"Thou didst, | O might | y God! | exist Ere time | began | its race; Before | the am | ple el | ements Fill'd up | the void | of space."

What is iambic verse? What are the principal forms of iambic verse? Examples of each.

18

 $\mathbf{Rem.}$  5. — A single syllable is sometimes added at the end of a line, for the sake of variety; as,

"Waft, waft, | ye winds, | his sto | ry;
And you, ye waters roll,
Till like | a sea | of glo | ry,
It spreads from pole to pole."

- § 287. The following forms of iambic verse are also occasionally employed:—
  - (1.) One iambus, with an additional syllable; as,

"Consent | ing, Repent | ing."

(2.) Two iambuses, with or without an additional syllable; as,

"What place | is here! What scenes | appear!" "Upon | a moun | tain, Beside | a foun | tain."

(3.) Three iambuses, with or without an additional syllable; as,

"A charge | to keep | I have,
A God | to glo | rify."

"Our hearts | no long | er lan | quish."

## Trochaic Verse.

- § 288. Trochaic verse is composed of trochaic feet, and has the accent on the odd syllables. The principal forms of Trochaic verse are the following:—
- 1. Three trochees in a line; or three trochees and an additional syllable; as,

"Wó is | mé, Al | háma."

"Haste thee, | Nymph, and | bring with | thee Jest, and | youthful | Jolli | ty."— Milton.

2. Four trochees; as,

"Round us | roars the | tempest | louder."

3. Six trochees; as,

"On a | mountain | stretch'd be | neath a | hoary | willow."

The following forms are sometimes employed: -

(1.) One trochee, with an additional syllable; as,

"Tumult | cease, Sink to | peace." (2.) Two trochees; or two trochees, with an additional syllable; as, "Wishes | rising,

Thoughts sur | prising."

"Give the | vengeance | due
To the | valiant | crew."

(3.) Five trochees; as,
"Virtue's | bright'ning | ray shall | beam for | ever."

## Anapestic Verse.

§ 289. Anapestic verse has the accent on every third syllable. The following are the principal forms:—

1. Two anapestic feet; or two anapests and an unaccented syllaable; as,

"They renew | all my joys."
"For no arts | could avail | him."

2. Three anapestic feet; as,

"I am out | of human | ity's reach,
I must fin | ish my jour | ney alone." — Cowper.

- 3. Four anapestic feet; or four anapests and an additional syllable; as,
  - "For a field | of the dead | rushes red | on my sight;
    And the clans | of Cullo | den are scat | ter'd in fight."—Campbell.

"On the cold | cheek of death, | smiles and ro | ses are blend | ing." — Beattie.

REM. — Iambic, trochaic, and anapestic feet, admit of occasional intermixture.

#### Trochaic and Iambic.

" Týrant | and sláve, | those námes | of háte | and féar."

Iambic and Anapestic.

"My sor | rows I then | might assuage."

#### POETIC LICENSE.

§ 290. Custom has given sanction to certain modes of expression in poetry, which are not conformable to the ordinary rules of grammar. The following are the most important of these peculiarities:—

What are the principal forms of anapestic verse? Examples of each. What peculiarities of expression are allowed in poetry. Examples of each class.

- 1. Poetry admits of many antiquated expressions and irregular forms of construction; as,
  - "Let each, as likes him best, his hours employ."
  - "Long were to tell what I have seen."
  - "He knew to sing and build the lofty rhyme."
- 2. Many words sometimes undergo changes in spelling, that the number of syllables may be made greater or less; as, 'qan, for began; e'er, for ever.
- 3. The arrangement of words frequently departs from the ordinary requirements of syntactical rules; as,
  - "In saffron robe with taper clear." Milton.
  - "No hive hast thou of hoarded sweets." Gray.
  - "A transient calm the happy scenes bestow." Ibid.
  - "When first thy sire to send on earth Virtue, his darling child, designed." — Ibid.
  - "Heaven trembles, roar the mountains, thunders all the ground."
  - "Thee, chantress, oft the woods among, I woo, to hear thy even song." - Milton.
  - 4. Adjectives are often used for nouns or adverbs; as,
    - " Gradual sinks the breeze into a perfect calm."
- 5. The conjunction nor is often used for neither, and or for either; as, "To them nor stores nor granaries belong."

  - "He riches gave, he intellectual strength, To few, and therefore none commands to be Or rich, or learned." - Pollok.
  - 6. Intransitive verbs are often used transitively; as,
    - "He mourned no recreant friend."
    - "Yet not for thy advice or threats, I fly These wicked tents devoted." - Milton.
  - 7. Poetry admits of a great variety of elliptical expressions; as, "The brink of [a] haunted stream."
    - "For is there aught in sleep [which] can charm the wise?"
      - "To whom thus Adam" [spake.]
  - [He] "Who does the best his circumstance allows, Does well, acts nobly,—angels could [do] no more." — Young.

# APPENDIX.

## FIGURES OF SPEECH.

§ 291. A FIGURE of speech is a departure from the ordinary form of words, from their regular construction, or from their literal signification.

Departures from the usual form of words are called figures of Etymology.

Departures from the regular construction of words are called figures of Syntax.

Departures from the literal signification of words are called figures of Rhetoric.

## Figures of Etymology.

- § 292. The figures of Etymology are Aphæresis, Sýncope, Apócope, Prósthesis, Paragoge, Synæresis, Diæresis, and Tmésis.
- 1. Aphæresis is the taking of a letter or syllable from the beginning of a word; as, 'neath, for beneath; 'gainst for against.

"But his courage 'gan fail, For no arts could avail."

- 2. Syncope is the elision of one or more letters from the middle of a word; as, ling'ring, for lingering; lov'd for loved.
- 3. Apocope is the elision of one or more letters from the end of a word; as, thro' for through; th' for the.
- 4. Prosthesis is the addition of one or more letters to the beginning of a word; as, beloved, for loved; enchain for chain.

Define a figure of speech. Wat are figures of Etymology?—of Syntax?—of Rhetoric? Define Aphæresis. Examples. Syncope. Examples. Apocope. Examples. Prosthesis. Examples.

- 5. Paragoge is the addition of one or more letters to the end of a word; as, awaken, for awake; bounden, for bound.
- 6. Synæresis is the contraction of two syllables into one; as, *vlienate*, for aliënate; learned, for learned.
- 7. Diæresis is the separation of two vowels standing together, so as to connect them with different syllables; as, coöperate, aërial.
- 8. Tmesis is the separation of a compound word into two parts, by introducing another word between them; as, "Thy thoughts which are to us ward," for "Thy thoughts which are toward us;"—"How high soever," for "Howsoever high."

## Figures of Syntax.

- § 293. The principal figures of Syntax, are Ellípsis, Pléonasm, Enállage, and Hypérbaton.
- 1. Ellipsis is the omission of one or more words which are necessary to complete the grammatical construction. The following examples will serve to illustrate this figure:—
  - (1) Nouns; as, "St Paul's" [church]; "The twelve" [apostles].
- (2) Adjectives; as, "Every day and [every] hour;" "A gentleman and [a] lady."
- (3) Pronouns; as, "I am monarch of all [which] I survey;"—
  "He left in the morning, and [he] returned the same day."
- (4) Verbs; as, "to whom the angel" [spoke]; [Let] "No man eat fruit of thee."
  - (5) Adverbs; as, "He spoke [wisely] and acted wisely."
- (6) Prepositions; as, "He was banished [from] England;"—
  "He lived like [to] a prince."
  - (7) Conjunctions; as, "I came, [and] I saw, [and] I conquered."
- (8) Phrases and entire clauses; as, "The day has been considered as an image of the year, and a year [has been considered] as the representation of life."—Johnson.

Paragoge. Examples. Synæresis. Examples. Diæresis. Examples. Tmesis. Examples. What are the principal figures of Syntax? Define Ellipsis. Examples of the omission of nouns;—adjectives;—pronouns;—verbs;—adverbs;—prepositions;—conjunctions. Give examples of the omission of phrases and clauses.

2. Pleonasm is the use of more words to express ideas, than are necessary; as, "What we have seen with our eyes, and heard with our ears."

Rem. — The repetition of a conjunction is termed Polysyndeton; as, "We have ships and men and money and stores."

- 3. Enallage is the use of one part of speech for another; as, "Slow rises worth by poverty depressed."
- 4. Hyperbaton in the transposition of words; as, "All price be yond," for "Beyond all price."

## Figures of Rhetoric.

- § 294. The principal figures of Rhetoric are Símile, Métaphor, Allegory, Antithesis, Hypérbole, Irony, Metónymy, Synécdoche, Personification, Apóstrophe, Interrogation, Exclamátion, Vísion, and Climax.
- 1. A Simile is a direct and formal comparison; as, "He shall be like a tree planted by the rivers of water."

"As, down in the sunless retreats of the ocean,
Sweet flowrets are springing, no mortal can see;
So, deep in my bosom, the prayer of devotion,
Unheard by the world, rises silent to thee." — Moore.

- 2. A Metaphor is an implied comparison; as, "What are the sorrows of the young? Their growing minds soon close above the wound."
- 3. An Allegory is a continued metaphor. In the following beautiful example found in the 80th Psalm, the people of Israel are represented under the symbol of a vine:—
- "Thou hast brought a vine out of Egypt; thou hast cast out the heathen and planted it. Thou preparedst room before it, and didst cause it to take deep root, and it filled the land. The hills were covered with the shadow of it, and the boughs thereof were like the goodly cedars. She sent out her boughs unto the sea, and her branches unto the river. Why hast thou then broken down her hedges, so that all they which pass by the way do pluck her? The boar out of the wood doth waste it, and the wild beast of the field doth devour it."
- 4. An Antithesis is an expression denoting opposition or contrast; as, "The wicked flee when no man pursueth, but the righteous are bold as a lion."
  - "Tho' deep, yet clear; tho' gentle, yet not dull."

Define Pleonasm. Examples. Enallage. Examples. Hyperbaton. Examples. Simile. Examples. Metaphor. Examples. Allegory. Examples. Antithesis. Examples.

- 5. An Hyperbole is an exaggeration in the use of language, representing objects as greater or less, better or worse, than they really are. Thus, David, speaking of Saul and Jonathan, says, "They are swifter than eagles; they were stronger than lions."
- 6. Irony is a mode of speech expressing a sense contrary to that which the speaker or writer intends to convey. The prophet Elijah employed this figure when he said to the priests of Baal: "Cry aloud, for he is a god; either he is talking, or he is pursuing, or he is in a journey, or peradventure he sleepeth, and must be awaked."
- 7. Metonymy is a figure by which one thing is put for another; as, "I have been reading Milton; that is, his poems or works.— "Gray hairs [old age] should be respected."
- 8. Synecdoche is a figure by which the whole is put for a part, or a part for the whole; as, "Man returneth to dust;" that is, his body.—" This roof [house] shall be his protection."
- 9. Personification or Prosopopeia, is a figure by which we attribute life and action to inanimate objects; or ascribe to irrational animals and objects without life, the actions and qualities of rational beings; as, "The ground thirsts for rain."

"See, Winter comes, to rule the varied year, Sullen and sad, with all his rising train." — Thomson.

10. Apostrophe is a figure by which a speaker or writer turns from the party to which his discourse is mainly directed, and addresses himself to some person or thing present, or absent; as, "Death is swallowed up in victory. O Death! where is thy sting? O grave! where is thy victory?"—1 Cor. 15: 54, 55.

Rem. — In modern usage, the term Apostrophe is applied to any address made to an inanimate object, an irrational animal, or an absent person; as,

"Hail, holy light, offspring of Heaven, first-born!" - Milton.

"Sail on, thou lone, imperial bird, Of quenchless eye and tireless wing." — Mellen.

"Alas! my noble boy! that thou shouldst die!
Thou, who wert made so beautifully fair!
That death should settle in thy glorious eye,
And leave his stillness in this clustering hair!
How could he mark thee for the silent tomb!
My proud boy, Absalom." — Willis.

- 11. Interrogation is a figure by which a question is asked for the purpose of expressing an assertion more strongly; as, "Do we mean to submit to the measures of Parliament, Boston Port Bill and all? Do we mean to submit, and consent that we ourselves shall be ground to powder, and our country and its rights trodden down in the dust? I know we do not mean to submit. We never shall submit." Webster.
- 12. Exclamation is a figure employed to express some strong emotion; as,
  - "O wretched state! O bosom, black as death!" Shakspeare.
  - "Ah! how unjust to nature and himself,
    Is thoughtless, thankless, inconsistent man!" Young.
- 13. Vision, or Imagery, is a figure by which past or future events are represented as passing before our eyes. The following is a beautiful example of this figure:—
- "Methinks I see it now, that one solitary, adventurous vessel, the Mayflower of a forlorn hope, freighted with the prospects of a future state, and bound across the unknown sea. I behold it pursuing, with a thousand misgivings, the uncertain, the tedious voyage. Suns rise and set, and weeks and months pass, and the winter surprises them on the deep, but brings them not the sight of the wished-for shore. I see them now scantily supplied with provisions, crowded almost to suffocation in their ill-stored prison, delayed by calms, pursuing a circuitous route; and now driven in fury before the raging tempest, on the high and giddy waves. The awful voice of the storm howls through the rigging. The laboring masts seem straining from their base; —the dismal sound of the pumps is heard; —the ship leaps, as it were, madly from billow to billow; —the ocean breaks, and settles with engulfing floods over the floating deck, and beats with deadening weight against the staggered vessel." E. Everett.
- 14. Climax is a figure in which the ideas rise in regular gradation; as, "What a piece of work is man! how noble in reason; how infinite in faculties! in form and moving, how express and admirable! in action, how like an angel! in apprehension, how like a god!"—Shakspeare.

Define Interrogation. Examples. Exclamation. Examples. Vision. Examples. Climax. Examples.

## ABBREVIATIONS.

A. or Ans. answer.

A. A. S. Academiæ Americanæ socius, fellow of the American Academy.

A. B. or B. A. artium baccalaureus, bachelor of arts.

Abp. archbishop.

Acct. account.

A. C. ante Christum, before Christ.

A. D. anno Domini, in the year of our Lord.

Adj. adjective.

Admr. administrator.

Adv. adverb.

Ala. Alabama.

A. M. ante meridiem, before noon; or, anno mundi, in the year of the world; or, artium magister, master of arts.

Anon. anonymous.

Apr. April.

Ark. Arkansas.

A. U. C. anno urbis conditæ, in the year of the city [Rome].

Aug. August.

Bart. baronet.

Bbl. barrel.

B. C. before Christ.

B. D. bachelor of divinity.

Benj. Benjamin.

Bp. bishop.

C. or cent. a hundred.

Capt. captain.

Chap. chapter. Chas. Charles.

Chron. Chronicles.

Co. company; county.

Col. colonel.

Coll. college.

Cor. Corinthians.

Cr. credit, or creditor.

Ct. or Conn. Connecticut.

Cts. cents.

Cwt. hundred weight.

D. (d.) denarius, a penny, or pence.

D. C. District of Columbia.

D. D. doctor of divinity.

Dea. deacon.

Dec. December.

Deg. degree, or degrees.

Del. Delaware.

Dep. deputy.

Deut. Deuteronomy.

Do. or ditto, the same.

Doct. doctor.

Dolls. or \$, dollars.

Doz. dozen.

Dr. debtor; doctor.

Dwt. pennyweight.

E. east.

Eccl. Ecclesiastes.

Ed. editor; edition.

E. g. exempli gratia, for example.

Eng. English, or England.

Eph. Ephesians.

Esq. esquire.

Etc. et cetera, and others, and so on-

Ex. Exodus; example.

Exr. executor.

Feb. Februray.

Fig. figure.

Fla. Florida.

Fol. folio.

· Fr. French.

F. R. S. fellow of the Royal Society.

Ga. Georgia.

Gal. Galatians.

Gall. gallon.

Gen. Genesis; general.

Gent. gentlemen. Geo. George.

Gov. governor.

Gr. grain.

H. or hr. hour.

H. B. M. His or Her Britannic Majesty.

Heb. Hebrews.

Hhd. hogshead.

H. M. His or Her Majesty.

Hon. honorable.

Ia. or Ind. Indiana.

Ib. or ibid. ibidem, in the same place.

Id. idem, the same.

I. e. id est, that is.

Ill. Illinois.

Inst. instant, i. e. present, or of this month.

Incog. incognito, unknown.

Isa. Isaiah.

Jan. January.

Jas. or Ja. James.

Jno. John.

Jona. Jonathan.

Jos. Joseph. Joshua.

Jun. or Jr. junior.

Kt. knight.

Ky. Kentucky. La. Louisiana.

Lam. Lamentations.

Lat. latitude.

L. C. Lower Canada.

Lev. Leviticus.

Lieut. lieutenant.

LL. D. legum doctor, doctor of laws.

Lon. longitude. Lond. London.

L. S. locus sigilli, the place of the seal.

M. mille, a thousand.

M. A. master of arts.

Maj. Major. Mar. March.

Mass. Massachusetts.

Matt. Matthew.

M. C. member of Congress.

Md. Maryland.

M. D. medicinæ doctor, doctor of medicine.

Me. Maine.

Messrs. Messieurs.

Mi. or Miss. Mississippi.

Mich. Michigan. Mo. Missouri.

M. P. member of Parliament.

Mr. Mister.

Mrs. Mistress.

MS. manuscript.
MSS. manuscripts.

N. North.

N. A. North America.

N. B. nota bene, take particular notice.

N. B. New Brunswick.

N. C. North Carolina.

N. E. New England; north-east.

Nem. con. nemine contradicente, no one opposing.

N. H. New Hampshire.

N. J. New Jersey.

No. number.

N. O. New Orleans.

Nov. November.

N. S. Nova Scotia; new style.

N. T. New Testament.

Num. Numbers.

N. W. north-west.

N. Y. New York.

O. Ohio.

Obt. obedient.

Oct. October.

O.S. old style.

Oxon. Oxonia, Oxford.

Oz. ounce, or ounces.

P. page.

Pa. or Penn. Pennsylvania.

Per cent. per centum, by the hun-

dred.

Pet. Peter.

Ph. D. doctor of philosophy.

Pl. plural.

P. M. post-master.

P. M. post meridiem, afternoon.

P. O. post-office.

Pp. pages.

Pres. president.

Prob. problem.

Prof. professor.

Prop. proposition.

Ps. Psalms.

P. S. post scriptum, postscript.

Q. or qu. question.

Q. E. D. quod erat demonstrandum, which was to be demonstrated.

Qr. quarter.

Qt. quart.

Q. v. quod vide, which see.

Rev. reverend; Revelation.

R. I. Rhode Island.

R. N. Royal Navy.

Robt. Robert.

Rom. Romans.

Rt. Hon. right honorable.

S. south; shilling, or shillings.

S. A. South America.

S. C. South Carolina.

Sec. secretary.

S. E. south east.

Sen. senior.

Sept. September.

Sq. square.

ss. scilicet, to wit, namely.

St. saint; street.

S. T. D. sanctæ theologiæ doctor, doc-

tor of theology.

S. W. south-west.

Tenn. Tennessee.

Thess. Thessalonians.

Thos. Thomas.

Tim. Timothy.

Tit. Titus.

Tr. translator; treasurer.

U. C. Upper Canada.

Ult. ultimo (last), the last month.

U. S. United States.

V. or vid. vide, see.

Va. Virginia.

Viz. videlicet, to wit, namely.

Vol. volume. Vols. volumes.

Vs. versus, against.

Vt. Vermont.

W. West.

W. I. West Indies.

Wk. week.

Wm. William.

Wt. weight.

Yd. yard.

Yds. yards.

&. and.

&c. et cetera, and others, and so forth.

4to. quarto.

8vo. octavo.

12mo. duodecimo.

18mo. octodecimo.

## INDEX.

Brackets, 199.

A, peculiar uses of this letter, 149. Abbreviations, 214. Abstract nouns, 53. Accent, 200, 202. Adjectives, 14, 22, 67, 144. Adverbs, 19, 117, 168. Adverbial phrases, 170. Adjuncts, 126, 186. Agreement, 126, 153. All, 145, 169. Allegory, 211. Alliteration, 204. Alphabet, 26, 42. Amen, 169. Analysis, 184. Anapestic verse, 204, 207. Antithesis, 211. Aphæresis, 209. Apocope, 209. Apostrophe, 200, 212. Apposition, 133, 174. Articles, 14, 69, 148. As, 174, 176. Asterisk, obelisk, etc., 200. Auxiliary verbs, 92.

Blank verse, 203. Both, 175. Brace, 201.

But, 178. Capital letters, 27. Caret, 201. Case, 63. Catalogue of grammars, 5. Cedilla, 200. Clauses, classification of, 191. Climax, 213. Close vowels, 32. Cognate sounds, 33. Collective nouns, 54, 154. Colon, 197. Comma, 193. Common and proper nouns, 53. Comparison of Adjectives, 70. Comparison of adverbs, 117. Composition, exercises in, passim.

Compound conjunctions, 172.

Compound prepositions, 177.

Conjugation of verbs, 92, 110.

Conjunctions, 20, 23, 119, 171.

Conjunctive adverbs, 117, 171.

Connection, 79, 117, 171-6, 192.

Corresponding conjunctions, 172.

Compound words, 47.

Consonants, 31, 38, 44.

Couplet, 204.

Dash, 198.

Declension of nouns, 66.

Declension of pronouns, 75 - 7, 80.

00.

Defective verbs, 116.

Definitive adjectives, 68.

Derivation, 121.

Derivative words, 47.

Descriptive adjectives, 68.

Diæresis, 200, 210.

Diphthongs, 32, 37.

Do, 109.

Drink, 112.

Each other, 134.

Either, 145.

Ellipsis, 200, 210.

Enallage, 211.

English Grammar, division of, 25.

Enough, 171.

Etymology, 51.

Exclamation, 199, 213.

Exercises, passim.

Feet, poetic, 204.

Figures of speech, 209.

First three, three first, etc., 151.

From thence, from whence, etc., 169.

Gender, 54.

General rule of syntax, 180.

Government, 126, 158, 178.

Hither, thither, etc., 169.

Hyperbaton, 211.

Hyperbole, 212.

Hyphen, 201.

Hypothetical form of verbs, 101.

Iambic verse, 204, 205.

Idiom, 126,

Imperative absolute, 154 – 5.

Imperatives in the first and third persons, 102.

Independent case, 136.

Index, 201.

Infinitives, government of, 162.

Interjections, 21, 120, 179.

Interrogation, 199, 213.

Interrogative form of verbs, 110.

Interrogative pronouns, 81.

Irony, 212.

Irregular verbs, 85, 111.

It, 138.

Italics, 28.

Lay and lie, 160.

Learn, used for teach, 160.

Lesser, 147.

Letters, 25.

Like, 178.

Logical subject, predicate, etc., 185.

Metaphor, 211.

Methinks, 116.

Metonymy, 212.

Mine, thine, etc., 75, 78.

Models of oral instruction, 13 – 18, 23.

Models of parsing, 143, 152, 157, 179.

Models of analysis, 189.

Models of connection of words,

Mode, 85.

Modifications of subject and predicate, 187, 188.

Near and nigh, 178.

Need, 91, 154,

## INDEX.

Negative form of verbs, 110. Never used for ever, 169. No, used for not, 170. Nominatives, 132. Nor - nor, for neither - nor, 173. Nouns, 12, 22, 52. Number, 58, 91. Numeral adjectives, 68. O'clock, 179. One another, 134. Open vowels, 32. Or - or, for either -- or, 173. Oral instruction, 11 - 24. Order of parsing, 131. Order of analysis, 189. Origin of English words, 121. Orthography, 25. Paragoge, 210. Paragraph, 201. Parenthesis, 199. Parsing, 131, 143, 152, 157, 167, 179, 182. Participles, 88, 166. Participial mode, 86. Participial nouns, 54. Participial adjectives, 69. Parts of speech, 11, 51. Pauses, poetic, 202. Period, 198. Personal pronouns, 74. Personification, 55, 212. Person, 57, 91. Phrase, 126. Pleonasm, 211. Plural of proper name and title,

Poetic license, 207.

Position of adjectives, 150. Position of adverbs, 170. Possessives, 64, 134. Possessive of nouns ending in the sound of s or z, 64. Potential mode, rejection of, 85. Predicate, 184 - 8. Prefixes, 122-4. Prepositions, 20, 23, 118, 176. Primitive words, 47. Principal parts of verbs, 92. Progressive form of verbs, 109. Pronouns, 18, 23, 74, 132, 138. Pronominal adjectives, 68. Proper and common nouns, 53. Proper names, pluralized, 62. Proper adjectives, 68. Prosody, 202. Prosthesis, 209. Punctuation, 193. Quantity, 202. Quotation points, 200. Relative pronouns, 79, 141, 171. Relative adverbs, 172. Regular verbs, 85. Rhyme, 203. Rules of Syntax, 126. Same case, 162. Save, 178. Scanning, 204. Section, 201. Semicolon, 197. Sentences, 125. Set and sit, 160. Shall and will, 93. Simile, 211. Simple words, 47.

Sounds of the letters, 33, 43.
Spelling, 48.
Stanza, 204.
Subject, 184-7.
Suffixes, 122.

Suffixes, 122. Syllables, 46 – 7. Synæresis, 210.

Syncope, 209.

Synecdoche, 212. Syntax, 125.

Tenses, 89, 163.

Than, 173 - 6. Than whom, 175.

That, 79, 80, 140, 172, 175.

There, 169.

This and that, 145.

Thither, 169. Thou, 76.

Tmesis, 210.

To-day, to-night, etc., 117.

Triphthongs, 32.

Triplet, 204.

Trochaic verse, 204, 206.

Unipersonal (impersonal) verbs, 116.

Verbs, 15, 22, 82, 153.

Versification, 203.

Vision, 213.

Voice of verbs, 83, 84.

Vowels, 31, 33, 43.

We, applied to one person, 139.

What, 80, 81, 141.

Where, 169.

Which, 79-81.

Whither, 169.

Who, 79, 80, 140.

Whose, possessive of which, 80,

140.

With, used as a connective, 155.

Words, 46.

Worth, 119.

Yes and no, 169.

You, sometimes singular, 76.

The second











